FREELANDER 2

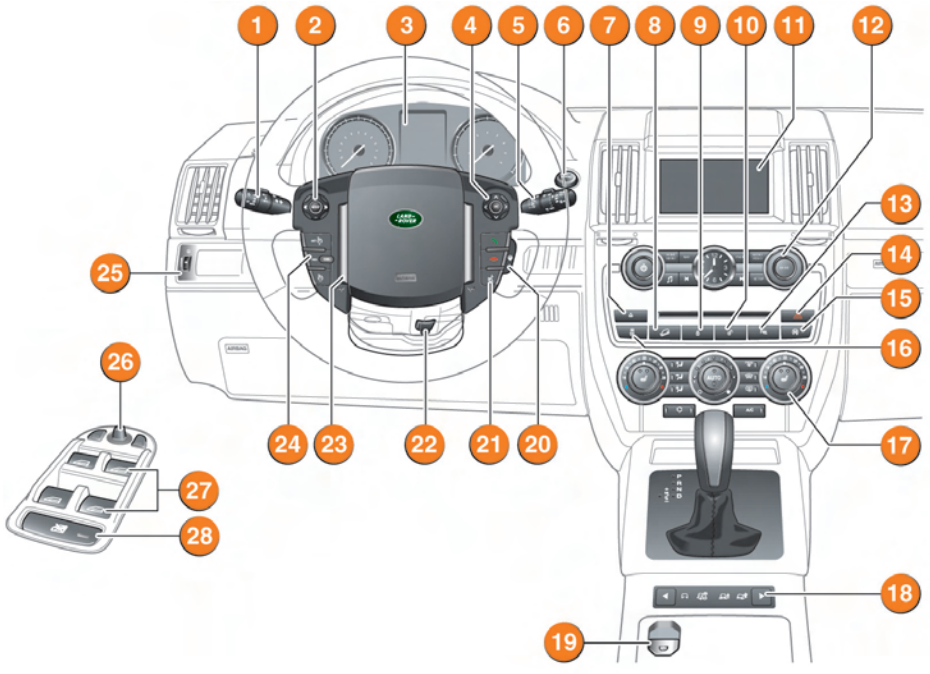
QUICK START GUIDE



SOME FEATURES MAY NOT BE FITTED TO YOUR VEHICLE.

2 DRIVER CONTROLS
3 VEHICLE ACCESS
4 COMFORT ADJUSTMENTS
7 DRIVING
11 TOUCH SCREEN
12 AUDIO/VIDEO
14 NAVIGATION SYSTEM
15 TELEPHONE
16 FILLING STATION INFORMATION

LAND ROVER



1. Lighting/direction indicator/trip computer
2. Audio controls
3. Instrument panel, warning lamps and message centre
4. Message centre control
5. Wiper/washer controls
6. Engine START/STOP
7. CD eject
8. Hill Descent Control
9. Central locking, lock
10. Central locking, unlock
11. Touch screen
12. Audio system and controls
13. Parking aid switch
14. Hazard warning lamps
15. Intelligent stop/start
16. Stability control (DSC)
17. Climate control
18. Terrain response
19. Electric parking brake
20. Heated steering wheel
21. Telephone and voice recognition controls
22. Steering column adjuster
23. Horn
24. Cruise control
25. Interior illumination control
26. Mirror adjuster/power fold mirror
27. Window controls
28. Rear window isolator

Locking and unlocking

Press once to switch the headlamps on. Press again to switch off.

Press to unlock and release the tailgate.

Press and hold for 3 seconds to activate/cancel the panic alarm.

Unlocking mode alternatives

Single-point entry. Press once to unlock only the driver's door. Press twice to unlock all doors and luggage area.

Multi-point entry. Press once to unlock all doors and luggage area.

To change the mode - with the vehicle unlocked, press and hold the lock and unlock buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds. The hazard warning lamps will flash to confirm the change.

Automatic relock

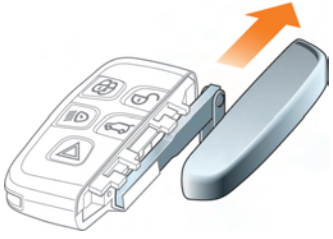
If the vehicle is unlocked and no door or tailgate is opened within 1 minute, it will automatically relock and arm the alarm.

Operating note

The Smart Key may not be detected if placed in a metallic container or behind a device with an LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including when inside a laptop bag), games console etc. Keep the Smart Key clear of such devices when attempting keyless entry or keyless starting.

Emergency key release

Slide the side section up to remove. Remove the keyblade and unfold it. Use the blade to gently prise off the front left side door lock cover.

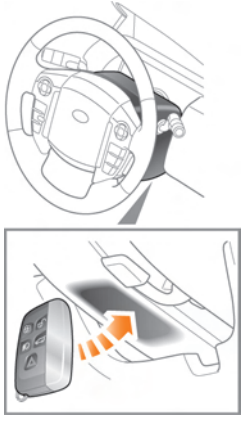


Insert the key into the exposed lock and turn towards the front of the vehicle, then release it to unlock.

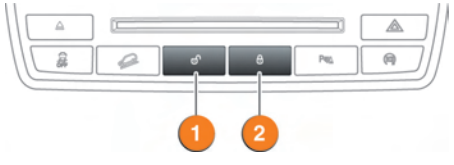
If the security system was previously armed with the Smart Key, when the door is unlocked the alarm will sound. To disarm the alarm, press the unlock button on the Smart Key or press the **START/STOP** button with the Smart Key inside the vehicle.

Operating note

If the Smart Key fails to work, hold it flat against the underside of the steering column with the buttons facing downwards. Start the engine as normal. The Smart Key can now be removed.



Central door locking



1. Press to unlock all doors and tailgate.
2. Press to lock all doors and tailgate. This will not enable the alarm.

To unlock only the tailgate, press and hold both switches simultaneously for 3 seconds.

Operating note

If the vehicle is locked with the remote control, the master unlocking switch will not release the locks. The door levers will still release locks and open doors.

Drive away locking

If enabled, all apertures will automatically lock when the vehicle speed exceeds 8 km/h (5 mph).

The feature can be turned on or off by a Land Rover Dealer.

Seat adjustment



Power seats

1. Seat back angle.
2. Seat forwards and back, cushion height and cushion angle.
3. Driving position memory controls.
4. Lumbar support control (memory seat only).
5. Lumbar support manual adjuster.

Manual seats

1. Seat forwards and back.
2. Height adjustment.
3. Seat back angle.

Windows and door mirrors

See page 2, items 26 to 27.

Electric windows

Firmly press or lift the respective window switch and release it. Movement can be stopped by briefly operating the switch again.

When the rear window isolator switch is pressed an indicator lamp illuminates in the switch.

Door mirror adjusting

Press **L** or **R** to select a mirror. Use the mirror adjuster to set mirror position.

Power folding door mirrors

Press **L** and **R** simultaneously to fold in. Press again to return the mirrors to the opened position.

Resonance with lowered windows

If a resonance/booming sound occurs when a rear window is open, lowering an adjacent front window about 25mm (1in) will eliminate the condition.

Reminder - Global closing

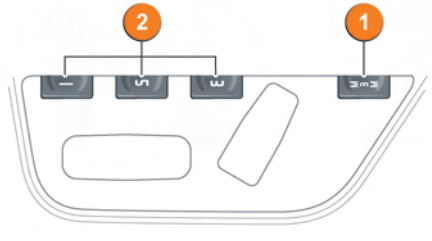
If any windows are left open when leaving the vehicle, press and hold the remote handset lock button to close them.

Driving position memory

Positions for driver's seat and exterior mirrors, can be stored in vehicle memory for future use.

1. On the side of the driver's seat, press the **MEM** button to activate the memory store function.
2. Within 5 seconds, press buttons **1**, **2** or **3** to store the current driving position to the chosen number. An existing setting on that button will be over-written.

A stored memory position can now be recalled with a press of the appropriate button; **1**, **2** or **3**. The seat and mirrors will move to their pre-set positions.

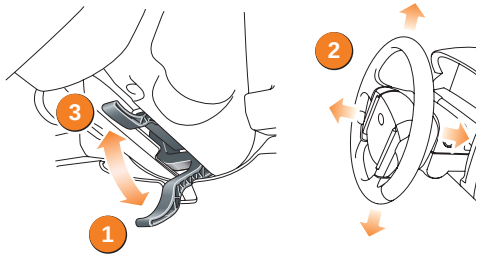


Operating note

Buttons **1**, **2** or **3** must be pressed within five seconds after pressing the **MEM** button otherwise the memory store function will cancel.

Steering column adjustment

See page 2, item 22.



With the vehicle stationary;

1. Unlock the lever.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.
3. Move the lever back to the lock position.

Steering column electronic lock

The steering column lock is deactivated when the vehicle is unlocked. The steering wheel may need slight rotation to release the lock.

Seat belts and child restraints



A warning indicator on the instrument panel will illuminate if a front seat belt is unbuckled. This may be accompanied by an intermittent chime.

Child seats

It is the weight of a child, rather than age, that determines the type of seat required.

Refer to **Child seats** in the Owner's Handbook to determine the correct seat for your child.

Passenger airbag deactivation



If it becomes necessary to fit a child restraint on the front passenger seat, the passenger airbag **MUST** be deactivated.

To deactivate, open the front passenger door and use the emergency key to turn the **PASS.AIRBAG** switch at the end of the facia to the **OFF** position.

The status indicator in the overhead console will be illuminated while the ignition is on.

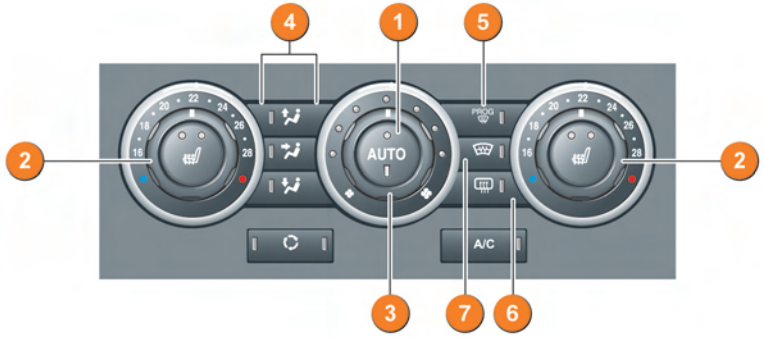
Operating note

When an adult or an average size child over 12 years is seated in the front passenger seat, ensure the **PASS.AIRBAG** switch is turned to the **ON** position.

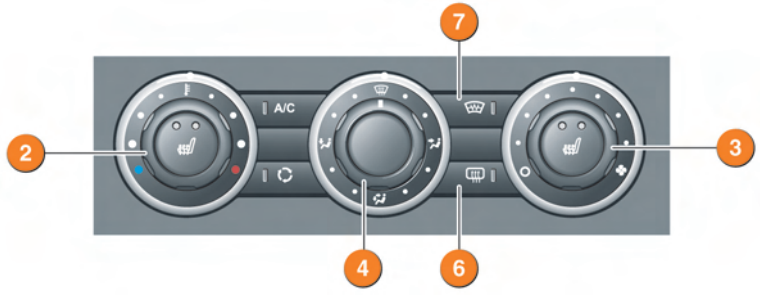
Climate control See page 2, item 17.

Illustrated controls may differ dependent on specification.

Automatic system



Manual system



1. **AUTO** (automatic) mode

AUTO is the recommended operating mode. Press for automatic operation of the climate control system.

The system will adjust the air conditioning, blower speed, air intake and airflow distribution to maintain the selected temperature(s) and reduce misting without constant manual adjustments.

2. Temperature control

Rotate the controls to set the required temperature.

Operating note

The automatic system allows a temperature differential of up to 4°C (7°F) between left and right passenger areas.

3. Blower control

Rotate clockwise to increase and counter-clockwise to decrease airflow from the vents.

4. Air distribution system

- Front screen and side window vents
- Face level
- Foot level

The automatic system allows more than one setting to be selected at once.

5. Maximum defrost program

Select to remove frost or heavy misting from the screens.

6. Heated rear screen

7. Heated front screen

External water deposits

The air conditioning system removes moisture from the air and deposits the excess water beneath the vehicle. Puddles may form but this is normal and no cause for concern.

Engine start/stop See page 2, item 6.

The **START/STOP** button is operational only when the Smart Key is inside the vehicle.

Ignition only on

1. Press once to switch on the ignition.
2. Press again to switch off.

Engine start

1. The selector lever must be in **P** or **N** position.
2. For automatic transmission, depress the foot brake. For manual transmission, depress the clutch pedal.
3. Now press and release the **START/STOP** button.

To stop the engine, press the button again.

Diesel engine starting

In extreme low temperatures, there may be a delay of up to 12 seconds between the **START/STOP** button being pressed and the engine cranking.

Ensure the foot brake or clutch remains depressed. **DO NOT** press the **START/STOP** button again. Cranking time will be increased.

Operating note

The **START/STOP** button must be pressed to stop the engine. If not, it will continue to run even if the Smart Key is removed from the vehicle.

Intelligent stop/start See page 2, item 15.

To aid fuel efficiency, the engine will automatically switch off when the vehicle comes to a stop, neutral is selected and the clutch is fully released. The engine will start again when the clutch is pressed.



This icon illuminates when intelligent stop/start has stopped the engine.

Operating note

When the vehicle comes to a stop, ensure that your feet do not touch the clutch or accelerator pedals. Inadvertent pressure will prevent the engine from stopping.



Gear shift indicator

While stop/start is enabled, the indicator will illuminate briefly in the instrument panel at the recommended point for gear change upshift.

The indicator will not illuminate if Cruise control is active.

Disabling intelligent stop/start



To disable, press the **ECO** button.

Operating note

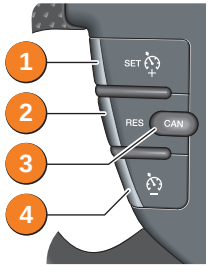
There are some operating conditions where automatic stop and subsequent restart is prevented.

Also, the engine may restart automatically if vehicle systems require it, for example, if demand on the climate control system increases.

These conditions are explained fully in the Owner's Handbook.

Cruise control See page 2, item 24.

1. Press to activate cruise control and to set a speed or increase the speed in 2 km/h (1 mph) increments.
2. Press to resume previous set speed retained in memory. Set speeds are cleared at ignition off.
3. Press to cancel cruise control but retain the set speed in memory for later use.
4. Press to decrease the speed in 2 km/h (1 mph) increments.



Cruise control override

Cruise control will disengage if the brake or clutch pedal is pressed or when vehicle speed falls below 30 km/h (18 mph).

Instrument panel warning lamps

The following lamps may illuminate during normal driving to indicate that a related system or feature is operating. If any other warning lamp illuminates, refer to the Owner's Handbook. DO NOT ignore warning lamps.

- Seat belt reminder
- Door open
- Diesel glow plugs active
- HDC active
- Cruise control active
- Side lamps on
- Headlamp high beam on
- Rear fog lamps on
- Front fog lamps on
- Parking brake on
- Gear shift indicator
- Intelligent stop/start active
- Trailer connected
- Direction indicators active

Exterior lights

See page 2, item 1.



1. **Outer collar**. First position for side lights, second position for headlamps, third position for **AUTO**. With **AUTO** selected, all lamps will switch on automatically when ambient light fades.

2. **Inner collar**. Turn up and release for front fog lamps. Turn down and release for rear fog lamps. Turn and release again for off.

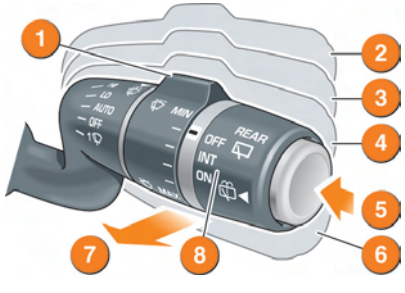
Headlamps high beam. Push forwards for high beam. To flash the headlamps, pull back and release.

High beam assist. Active when set in the Instrument panel menu**, AUTO** is selected and low beams are in use. High beam will automatically activate when the sensor detects no light or very low light source ahead. Low beam will be automatically selected when appropriate.

Wipers and washers

See page 2, item 5.

1. Rotate to adjust intermittent delay.
2. High speed wipe.
3. Low speed wipe.
4. **AUTO** (sensor controlled) or intermittent wipe.
5. Rear screen wash/wipe.
6. Windscreen single wipe.
7. Windscreen wash/wipe.
8. Rotate to the first position for intermittent rear screen wipe. Rotate to the second position for continuous wipe.



If freezing conditions are likely, the wipers can be set to a higher position so that they can be lifted from the screen. See **Instrument panel menu**.

Care point

Before entering an automatic car wash, turn the wipers off to deactivate the **AUTO** wipe sensor.

Parking aids

See page 2, item 13.

Front and rear parking aids are activated when reverse gear is selected. When a forward gear is subsequently selected, the parking aids remain active until vehicle forward speed exceeds 16 km/h (10 mph).

If an obstruction is detected, an intermittent tone will sound. Moving closer to the obstruction will increase the tone frequency.



Parking aids switch

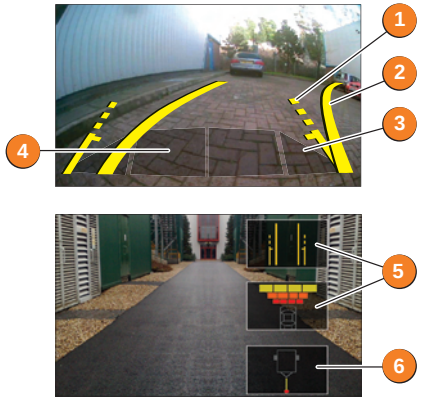
Press the switch to deactivate.

Rear camera

When reverse gear is selected, the camera provides a rear view image with overlaid guidelines to assist while reversing.

To view the parking aid display instead or to cancel camera display at any time, briefly touch the display.

1. Broken line - full width of vehicle.
2. Solid line - projected reversing path.
3. Shade - area required for tailgate access.
4. Parking sensors activated.
5. User options. Touch one of the mini views to select overlay options.
6. Hitch assist. To aid the process of guiding the vehicle to the trailer tow hitch.
A single hitch line is displayed as the reversing guideline. As the vehicle closes to within 0.6 m (23 in) of the tow hitch, an automated zoom is operated.



Sunroof



To fully open and close

1. Press and release switch to fully open.
2. Press and release switch to fully close.

To tilt from closed position

Press and release switch **2** to open to tilt position.

Press and release switch **1** to fully close.

Stop movement by pressing the switch again.

Operating note

The sunroof will operate for 30 seconds after the ignition has been switched off as long as the front doors remain closed.

The sunroof switch must be pressed until the roof reaches the desired position.

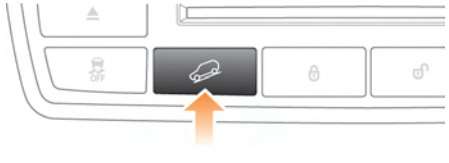
Hill descent control (HDC)

See page 2, item 8.

HDC allows greater downhill control particularly when descending severe off-road gradients.

Press the HDC switch. HDC can be selected at speeds below 80km/h (50mph) but will not be fully active until vehicle speed is below 50km/h (30mph).

The cruise control **+** and **-** can be used to adjust descent speed.



A continuously illuminated indicator in the instrument pack confirms HDC selection.

Press the switch again to deselect HDC.

Transmission

Gearshift selection

1. With the engine running and the foot brake applied, press in the selector release button. Move the gear selector from Park position.

Automatic gear selection

Select **D**rive for fully automatic gear changes. The LED to the left of **D** will illuminate.

Sport mode

This is an automatic gear change mode, however, change points are modified to make full use of engine power.

2. The **M/S** LED will illuminate and the message centre will display **SPORT** when the gear selector is moved to the left side.

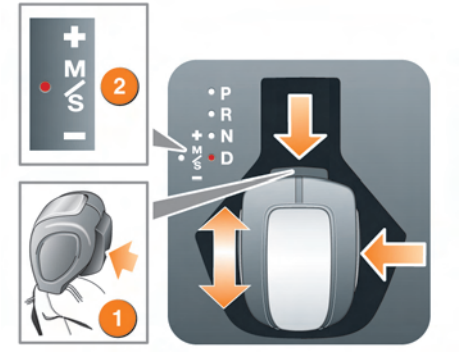
To return to automatic gear selection, move the gear selector back to the **D**rive position.

CommandShift gear selection

This is an alternative to the fully automatic modes and is effective when rapid acceleration and engine braking are required.

With Sport mode selected, move the selector lever forward or back for manual gear selection. After each gear change the selector returns to the central position. The message centre will display the selected gear.

To return to automatic gear selection, move the gear selector back to the **D**rive position.



Operating note

If Terrain Response is fitted, Sport mode is available only when the General program is selected.

With the gear selector in Sport, the transmission will stay in lower gears for longer with downshifts occurring more readily. Fuel consumption will be adversely affected.

Terrain response *See page 2, item 18.*

When the vehicle is started, Terrain Response will normally start in its **General** program.

Program selection is via a centre console switch.



Use the switches to select a program. Icons will illuminate as selected. The message centre will also display an icon.

We recommend that a special program be engaged whenever driving conditions are difficult and then moved back to the **General** program once those conditions are no longer present.

General - Use for typical road surfaces.

Grass-Gravel-Snow - Suitable for surfaces which are firm but have a slippery surface, e.g. grass, snow, loose gravel, pebbles or icy conditions.

Mud-Ruts - Suitable for soft, muddy, uneven or rutted ground.

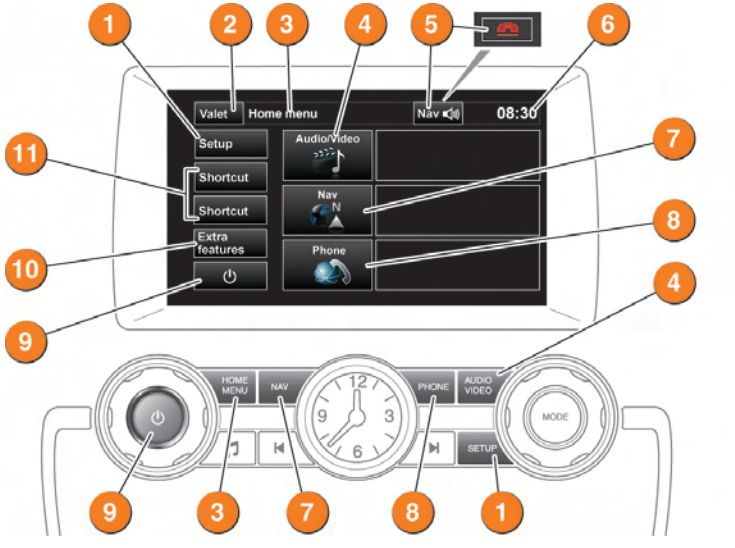
Sand - Suitable for soft, predominantly dry, yielding sandy ground, e.g. sand dunes and deserts. If the sand is damp or wet, the Mud-Ruts program may be more beneficial.

Wading

Select the program most suitable for the surface beneath the water. DO NOT exceed 500 mm (20 inches) water depth.

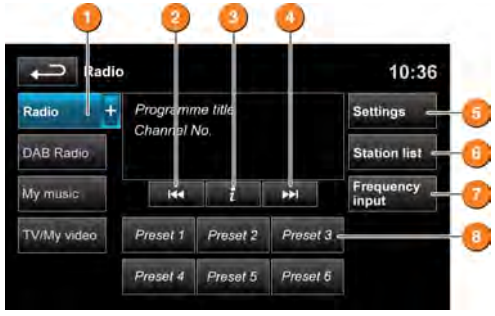
Touch screen *See page 2, item 11.*

The touch screen requires only light touches. Excess pressure could result in damage.



1. Touch to select the touch screen **Setup** menu.
2. Touch to select **Valet** mode. During menu mode, the icon is changed to the back soft key, touch to return to the previous screen displayed.
3. Touch or press to select the **Home menu**.
4. Touch or press to select the **Audio/Video** menu.
5. While navigation is operating, touch to repeat the last given navigation instruction. During a phone call, the icon is changed. Touch to end the call.
6. Touch to adjust time/date.
7. Touch or press to select the On road Navigation menu. Current set destination is displayed.
8. Touch or press to select the **Phone** menu.
9. Touch to turn on/off the screen.
10. Touch to select the **Extra features** menu.
11. Touch to select Home menu shortcuts.

Radio



1. Touch to view and select a waveband.

2. Seek down: Short touch to auto seek down to the next radio station. Long touch to activate manual seek mode.

3. Information from the current station.

4. Seek up: Short touch to auto seek up to the next radio station. Long touch to activate manual seek mode.

5. Touch to view and activate/ deactivate: RDS, Traffic, News, AF and REG.

6. Touch to view a list of available stations on the FM waveband.

7. Touch to enter a station frequency on the current waveband, using the numeric keypad. Select OK or wait for automatic tuning.

8. Station presets: Touch and release a preset to tune to the station stored on that preset. Touch and hold to store the current station to that preset.

DAB radio

Digital radio channels are arranged into groups called ensembles. Each digital channel may also have associated subchannels.

Note: Subchannels are temporary channels and may be discontinued at any time.



1. Touch to view and select a DAB band (DAB 1, 2 or 3). The radio will tune to the last used channel on that band. Touch again to close.

2. Seek down: Short touch to seek previous available channel. Long touch to seek previous available Ensemble. The first channel in the new Ensemble will be selected.

3. Touch to view DAB text and channel information.

4. Seek up: Short touch to seek next available channel. Long touch to seek next available Ensemble. The first channel in the new Ensemble will be selected.

5. Touch to view:- **Options**: activate/deactivate FM Traffic and Link DAB and to alter DAB country and DAB format settings (with vehicle stationary).
Announcements: select an alarm announcement and up to 3 other announcement types from the list. Selected types will interrupt the current programme when broadcast.

6. Touch to view a list of available Ensembles and channels. The list can be sorted by Ensemble, Channel, Subchannel or by Category.
If an Ensemble is selected from the list, all available channels from that ensemble will be displayed.
Sorting by Subchannel is only available when the current channel is broadcasting subchannels.
If Category is selected, touch the chosen category to view corresponding channels, before making your selection from the list.

7. If subchannels are broadcast by the current channel, **Subchannel** will be active. Touch then select the required subchannel with the seek soft keys.

8. Select to scan for all available DAB Ensembles/ channels. This needs to be done before using the DAB radio for the first time. **Auto-tune** is also useful when travelling long distances, so regional Ensembles can be tuned.

9. Station presets: Touch and release a preset to tune to the station stored on that preset. Touch and hold to store the current station to that preset.

*Note: If you attempt to select a preset channel that is now unavailable or invalid, **no reception** is displayed.*

Portable media



Includes CD, iPod®, USB, AUX and Bluetooth® devices. The full infotainment system also includes Stored CD.

1. Touch + icon to display all options. Select an option.

Note: Sound quality and volume levels available from devices connected to the auxiliary input may vary widely.

2. Touch to switch traffic and news on or off. Additionally, for MP3 recorded media, you can select the number of list entries that are skipped when you use the page up/ down arrows.

3. Depending on the selected mode, this soft key will be either **Track list** or **Browse**.

Track list.

- Touch to view current CD or Stored CD track list. Select a track to start playback.

Browse. iPod, USB and Stored CD modes only.

- Touch to view contents of the connected device and start playback.

4. Touch to view and manage the Stored CD memory.

- Select Upload alongside an empty slot to upload a CD. There are 10 slots available.
- Select Replace to overwrite an existing CD.

Note: Loading time is dependent on content type. Other features can be selected while upload is in progress.

5. Skip/Scan forward.

6. **Repeat**
In CD mode;

- Touch to repeat the current track continuously.

Touch again to repeat the current Stored CD (or folder for MP3 discs) continuously until **Repeat** mode is cancelled. Touch again to cancel.

In USB or iPod mode;

- Touch to repeat the current track continuously. Touch again to repeat the current folder (USB) or to cancel **Repeat** mode (iPod). Touch again to cancel.

Note: Repeat mode is not available for Bluetooth® devices.

7. Pause/Play: Select to pause playback. Select again to resume playback.

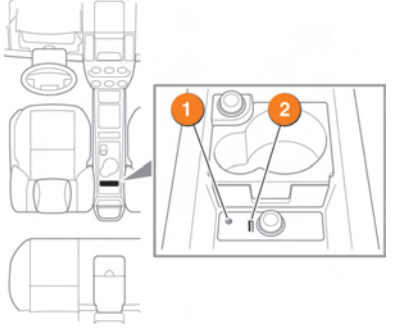
8. Information about the current track.

9. Touch to play random tracks from the current media. Touch again to cancel.

Note: Shuffle mode is not available for Bluetooth® devices.

10. Skip/Scan backward.

Connecting a device

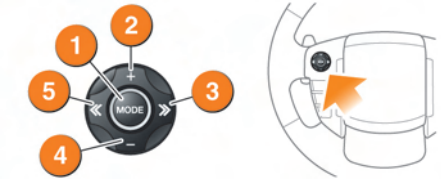


1. 3.5 mm AUX sockets.

2. USB socket.

Steering wheel audio control

See page 2, item 2.



1. Press repeatedly for options.

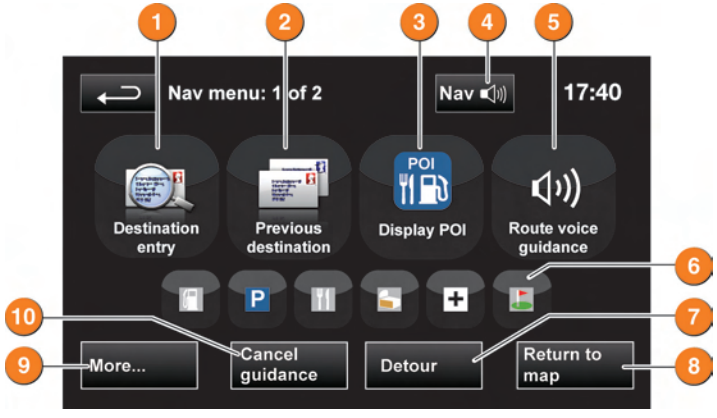
2. Volume increase.

3. Seek up.

4. Volume decrease.

5. Seek down.

Nav menu



1. Use to enter a new destination. Provides a choice of options when entering a destination.

2. Displays previous destinations entered. Previous destinations can be selected .

3. Turns the POI (Point Of Interest) icons on the map on/off.

4. Only visible when a destination is set. Enables the last voice instruction to be repeated.

5. Soft key is highlighted while voice guidance is enabled. Touch to turn voice guidance off.

6. POI shortcuts: Touch icon to list available POIs that are close to the vehicle position.

7. Calculates a detour from the current route.

8. Advances to the main map screen.

9. Move to other Navigation menu. There are 2 navigation menu screens. The second map screen features soft keys for **Stored locations**, **TMC**, **Route options** and **Nav set-up**.
Use the **More...** soft key to toggle between them.

10. Cancel current route guidance.

On the second screen, **Stored locations** is used to manage the stored data. **TMC** (Traffic Message Channel) will provide data about road conditions and any events that may affect the current route. **Route options** allows the selection of various options for the route and **Nav set-up** is for setting personal preferences within the navigation system.

Selecting navigation

When navigation is selected after the ignition is turned on, a caution screen is displayed. Touch **Agree**.

Note: At the first time of accessing the caution screen, set the required language.

Setting a destination

Select **Destination entry**.

Select **Address** and enter address details using the keyboard. As each part of the address is refined, touch **OK** or **List** to display all the streets and towns that are available to be selected. If the house number is not known, press **OK**, the mid-point of the road is then used as the destination.

When the address entry fields are complete, press **OK** to move to the map screen.

Start guidance

When in the map screen touch **GO** to start guidance.

Review route.

There will be a choice of **3 routes** or **Change route**. **3 routes** will display 3 different route options on the map. Select **Route 1**, **2** or **3** by touching the respective box displayed on the right side of the map and then select **GO**.

Bluetooth® phones

Compatible Bluetooth phones can communicate with the vehicle's inbuilt telephone system.

Bluetooth phone compatibility

For the latest list of compatible phones and their software, refer to **www.landrover.com**. Select **OWNERS** then **Bluetooth®**.

Connection must be made with ignition on or engine running.

Use the following procedure in conjunction with your Bluetooth phone manufacturer's instructions.

Pairing and connecting using the phone

Note: The process of pairing and connecting a phone to the vehicle will vary depending on the type of phone used.

1. Switch the ignition on and ensure that the touch screen is active.

2. From the **Home menu**, select **Phone**.

3. A menu will appear. If no phone is connected, select **Search new**, otherwise select **Change phone** and then select **Search new**.

4. Select **Device to vehicle** option.

Note: The vehicle's Bluetooth system is discoverable for only 3 minutes.

5. Using the phone, search for Bluetooth devices. On some phones, this is referred to as new paired device. See your phone's operating instructions for further information.

6. When the vehicle's Bluetooth system is discovered, begin the pairing process and follow the on-screen instructions.

7. When requested, enter a PIN of your choice into the phone and vehicle system.

8. Once your phone is paired it may automatically connect to the vehicle system. If not, use the device list shown on the touch screen or use the phone.

Note: Some phones require the Bluetooth® pairing to be set as 'authorised' or 'trusted' in order to automatically connect. Please refer to your phone's operating instructions for further information.

Downloading phonebook entries

When a phone with phonebook download capability is paired and docked, its phonebook directory can be automatically downloaded to the vehicle system.

See **PHONEBOOK** in the Owner's Handbook for more information.

Calls via the touch screen



With a paired and active phone press the **PHONE** button on the touch screen surround.

1. Select **Digit Dial**, **Phonebook** or **Last 10**. With **Digit Dial** selected, use the keypad to enter the number. With **Phonebook** selected, chose a number from the downloaded phonebook. **Last 10** displays the previous 10 calls. Choose one to dial.

2. Touch the connect icon to make the call. The icon will change to a connected call icon. Touch the icon to end a call.

Calls via the steering wheel controls

See page 2, item 2 and 21.

Connect. Press and release to send or accept a call or to access the last 10 dialled list. Press and hold to access the phonebook.

Disconnect. Use to end or reject a call.

Voice control talk button. The screen will display available options. Say 'Phone' and follow instructions.

Press to increase call volume.

Press to decrease call volume.

Press to scroll up or down lists of calls or phonebook entries.

Refuelling

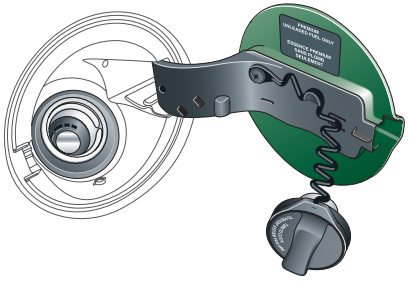
Fuel filler flap



The fuel filler flap is located on the right side of the vehicle. If the vehicle is locked with the remote control, the fuel filler flap can not be opened. Pull the flap at the rear edge to open.

Filler cap

Twist the cap counter-clockwise to undo.



A hook is provided on the flap to hold the cap out of the way while refuelling. After refuelling, tighten the cap until it clicks 3 times.

Fuel specification

The correct fuel specification for your vehicle is shown on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

Incorrect fuelling

- DO NOT use E85 fuels (85% ethanol content). Equipment necessary for the use of fuels containing more than 10% ethanol is not fitted to this vehicle. If E85 fuels are used serious engine and fuel system damage will occur.
- DO NOT use RME (bio-diesel) except in the case of those proprietary diesel fuels which contain a mix of up to 7%. Land Rover can accept no responsibility for damage caused by using RME in concentrations greater than 7%.
- For diesel vehicles, use diesel fuel to specification EN 590 with a maximum bio-diesel mix of 7%.

Filling with the wrong fuel

If the vehicle is filled with the wrong type of fuel:

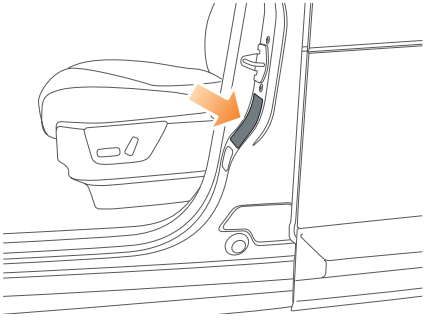
- DO NOT start the engine!
- Call for qualified assistance!

Bonnet release

The bonnet release is located in the left side footwell.

Tyre pressure label

Tyre pressures are displayed on a label attached to the pillar behind the driver's door or on the rear edge of the driver's door.





FREELANDER 2

OWNER'S HANDBOOK

Publication Part No. LRL 10 02 56 131

ABOUT THIS HANDBOOK

Please take the time to study all of the owner/operator literature supplied with your vehicle as soon as possible.

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

The information contained in this handbook covers all vehicle derivatives and optional equipment, some of which may not be fitted to your vehicle. Due to printing cycles, this handbook may include descriptions of options before they become generally available.

The vehicle options, hardware and software, are designed for the market in which the vehicle is intended for original sale. If the vehicle is to be registered or used in another geographical area, it may need modifications to suit local requirements. Land Rover is not responsible for the cost of any modifications. Warranty conditions may be affected.

The information contained in this publication was correct when it went to print. Subsequent vehicle design changes may result in a supplement being added to the literature pack. Updates can also be viewed on the Land Rover internet site at; **www.ownerinfo.landrover.com**.

In the interest of development, the right is reserved to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice and without incurring any obligations. This publication, or part thereof, may not be reproduced nor translated without our approval. Errors and omissions excepted.

SYMBOLS USED IN THIS HANDBOOK

Safety warnings indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury.

Cautions indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of damage to your vehicle.



This recycling symbol identifies those items that must be disposed of safely in order to prevent unnecessary damage to the environment.



This symbol identifies those items that must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer and/or your local authority.



This symbol identifies those features that can be adjusted, disabled or enabled by your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

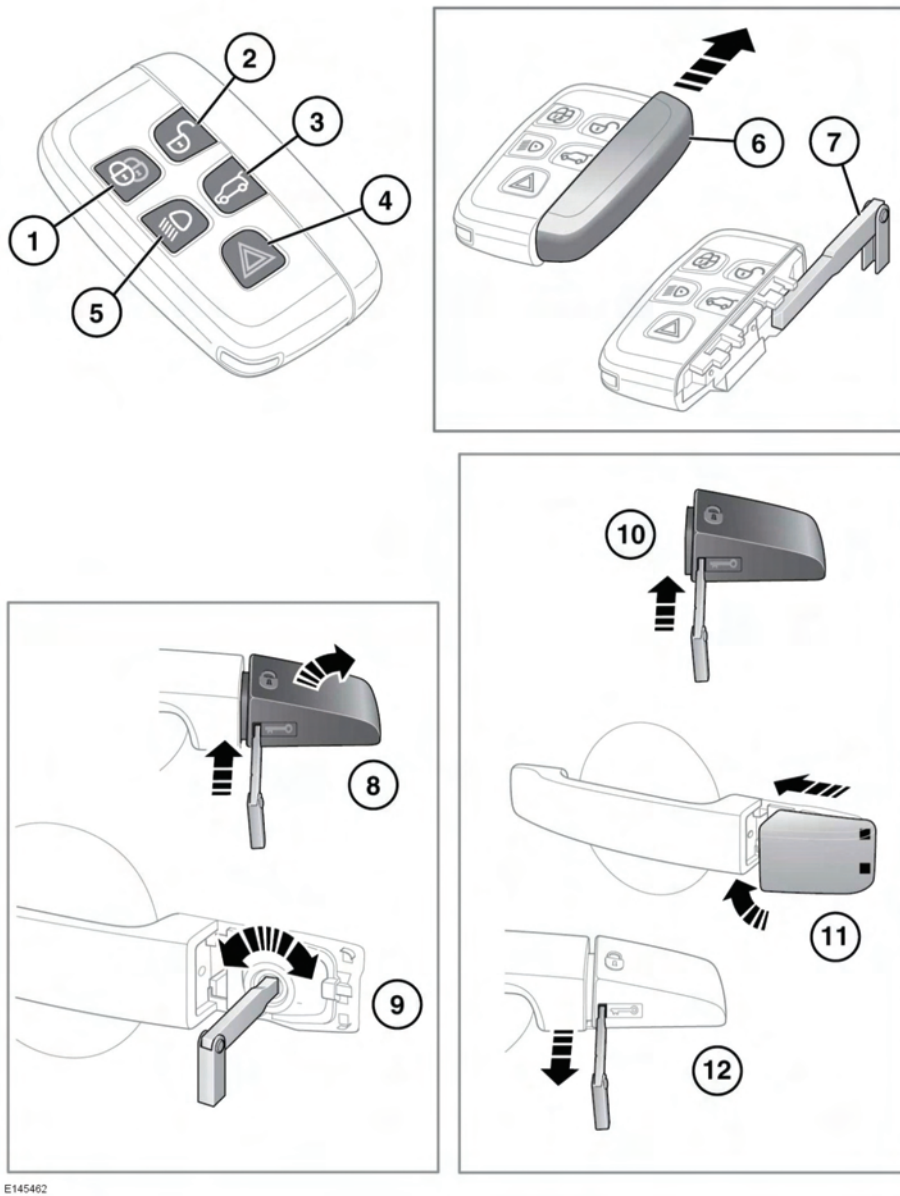
©Land Rover 2012.

All rights reserved. Published by **Land Rover**.

Introduction....2
Entering the vehicle....5
Exiting the vehicle....9
Front seats....11
Rear seats....15
Head restraints....16
Steering wheel....17
Seat belts....18
Child safety....21
Airbags....26
Exterior lights....31
Interior lights....33
Windows....34
Mirrors....36
Garage door opener....38
Wipers and washers....41
Instrument panel....43
Warning lamps....46
Heating and ventilation....50
Storage compartments....55
Load carrying....57
Towing....59
Starting the engine....61
Intelligent stop/start....63
Gearbox....64
Stability control....66
Brakes....67
Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)....69
Parking aids....71
Vehicle recovery....74
Cruise control....76
Terrain response....77
Hill descent control (HDC)....79
Touch screen....81
Audio/video overview....84
Radio....89
DAB radio....91
Portable media....94
Video media player....99
Voice control....101
Telephone....103
Navigation system....108
Standard audio system....121
Tyre repair kit....132
Fuel and refuelling....137
Maintenance....142
Fluid level checks....157
Technical specifications....162
Vehicle battery....168
Tyres....172
Fuses....178
Wheel changing....186
After a collision....189
Vehicle identification....190
Type approval....192
Controls overview....218

Contents

UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE



Any implanted medical device should be kept at a distance, of at least 9 inches (22 cm) away, from any of the vehicle transmitters/receivers during their normal operation. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the vehicle system and the medical device. For locations of vehicle mounted transmitters/receivers see 166, REMOTE KEY FOB TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS.

To prevent accidental operation, never leave the Smart Key in the vehicle if children or animals are also left in the vehicle.

Note: *The operational range of the Smart Key will vary considerably depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.*

Note: *If any door or the tailgate is unlocked 10 times within a short period, the latch is disabled for approximately one minute.*

1. Lock:
   - Press to secure the vehicle. The vehicle can be Single or Double locked. See **9, SINGLE LOCKING**. See **9, DOUBLE LOCKING**.

     See also **9, GLOBAL CLOSING**.
2. Unlock:
   - Press briefly to unlock the vehicle and deactivate the alarm. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice to indicate that the vehicle is unlocked and the alarm has been deactivated. The interior lamps and puddle lamps will illuminate to assist entry to the vehicle. Power fold mirrors will unfold (if enabled).

     Press and hold to open all windows.
3. Tailgate release:
   - Press briefly to open the tailgate. If the vehicle is locked and armed, the security system will remain active while the tailgate is open, but intrusion and inclination sensing systems will be disabled.

     When closing the tailgate again, if the vehicle is already locked and armed, the hazard warning lamps will flash after a few seconds to confirm the full alarm system has been reactivated. There will also be an audible sound if the vehicle was double locked.

     Ensure that the Smart Key does not remain in the vehicle prior to closure. If the vehicle is in an area of localised RF interference or the Smart Key is shielded by metal objects, the vehicle may close and lock with no means of opening again.
4. Panic alarm:
   - Press and hold for three seconds (or press three times within three seconds) to activate the horn and the hazard lamps.
   - Once active for more than five seconds, the alarm can be cancelled by pressing the button and holding for three seconds (or pressing three times within three seconds).
   - The emergency alarm will also be cancelled if a valid Smart Key is present when the START/STOP button is pressed.

5. Approach illumination:
   - When approaching the vehicle during darkness, press to switch on the approach illumination. Press again to turn the approach lamps off. The approach illumination period set at the factory is 30 seconds. This delay period may be configured to provide illumination lasting between 0 and 240 seconds. See **43, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

   Note: *In some markets a second press of the button will turn on the headlamps and reversing lamps. A third press will be required to turn the lamps off.*
6. Emergency key access: slide open the side cover.
7. Remove the emergency key blade and unfold.
8. Fully insert the emergency key blade to remove cover.
9. Fully insert the emergency key blade into the lock and rotate to unlock the door.
10. Fully insert the emergency key blade into the lock cover.
11. Locate the rear of the lock cover using the tabs and close the cover.
12. Remove the emergency key blade from the cover.

Note: *When the door is opened the alarm will begin to sound. To silence the alarm, dock the remote control.*

STEERING COLUMN LOCK

The electric steering column lock will lock/unlock when the vehicle is locked/unlocked.

If any malfunction of the steering column lock occurs, a message will be displayed in the message centre. If this occurs:

1. From the driver's seat, lock and then unlock the vehicle using the Smart Key.
2. Try again to unlock the steering column lock, by turning the steering wheel gently to the left and right while locking and then unlocking the vehicle using the Smart Key.
3. If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance.

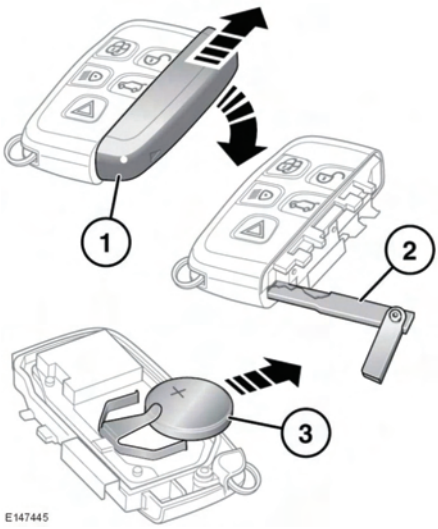
DRIVE-AWAY LOCKING

Drive-away locking automatically locks all the doors when the vehicle is in motion. This feature can be enabled/disabled via the **Vehicle Set-Up** menu (see **43, INSTRUMENT PANEL**).

Note: *Pressing the lock or unlock button on the Smart Key will override drive-away locking for the current journey.*

REMOTE KEY FOB BATTERY REPLACEMENT

When the battery needs replacing, there will be a significant decrease in the effective range and a message will be displayed in the Message centre.



To replace the battery:

1. Remove the cover by sliding in the directions of the arrows.
2. Use the emergency key blade to separate the Smart Key body.
3. Fit a new and unused CR2032 type battery (available from a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer) with the positive (+) side upwards.

Note: *Avoid touching the new battery. Moisture/oil from fingers can reduce battery life and corrode the contacts.*

Refit the parts in reverse order, ensuring that they click securely into place.



Battery disposal: Batteries contain harmful substances and must be disposed of correctly. Seek advice on disposal from a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer and/or your local authority.

SINGLE LOCKING

Press the lock button on the remote control briefly to single lock the vehicle. The hazard warning lamps will flash to confirm. Single locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors from being opened from outside. The doors may still be unlocked and opened from inside the vehicle. In this state, only the perimeter alarm is activated.

Note: *This setting should be used in circumstances such as travelling on a ferry, when pets are to be left in the vehicle, or if a window must be left open etc.*

Note: *The fuel filler flap can only be opened when the vehicle is unlocked.*

PERIMETER ALARM

When activated, the perimeter alarm will sound if:

- The bonnet, tailgate or a door are opened.
- The vehicle battery is disconnected.
- An attempt is made to disconnect the alarm siren.

DOUBLE LOCKING

Never double lock the vehicle with people, children, or pets inside. In the event of an emergency they would be unable to escape and the emergency services would be unable to release them quickly.

Press the lock button twice briefly to double lock the vehicle. Double locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors being opened from inside or outside of the vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from inside the vehicle when double locked.

This provides additional security if the vehicle is left unattended. The vehicle cannot be opened by breaking a window and operating the door locks from inside.

Additionally, double locking also activates the full alarm system.

Note: *The fuel filler flap can only be opened when the vehicle is unlocked.*

FULL ALARM

When activated, the full alarm will sound if:

- The bonnet, tailgate or a door are opened.
- Movement is detected within the vehicle interior.
- A window, front or rear windscreen or sunroof glass are broken.
- The vehicle is raised or tilted.
- The vehicle battery is disconnected.
- An attempt is made to disconnect the alarm system.

Note: *In this state, an open window or sunroof will cause the alarm to sound due to the movement of air currents. For this reason, ensure all windows and the sunroof are fully closed before double locking the vehicle.*

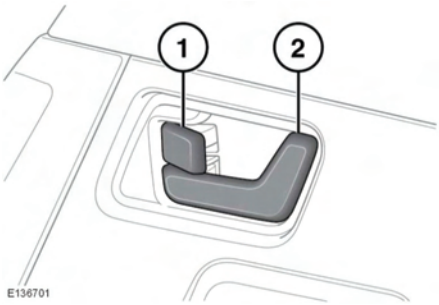
GLOBAL CLOSING

Ensure that no children, pets, or obstructions are in any open aperture before operating global closing. Safety mechanisms are in place to prevent serious injury, however injuries can still occur.

Note: *For safety reasons the sunroof does not close automatically. It should be closed in the normal way before exiting the vehicle.*

Press and hold the lock button for 3 seconds. The vehicle will single lock and the full alarm will be activated immediately. After 3 seconds any open windows will be closed.

DOOR LOCKS AND RELEASE LEVERS



From inside the vehicle, all the doors can be locked by pressing either the driver or passenger lock lever (**1**).

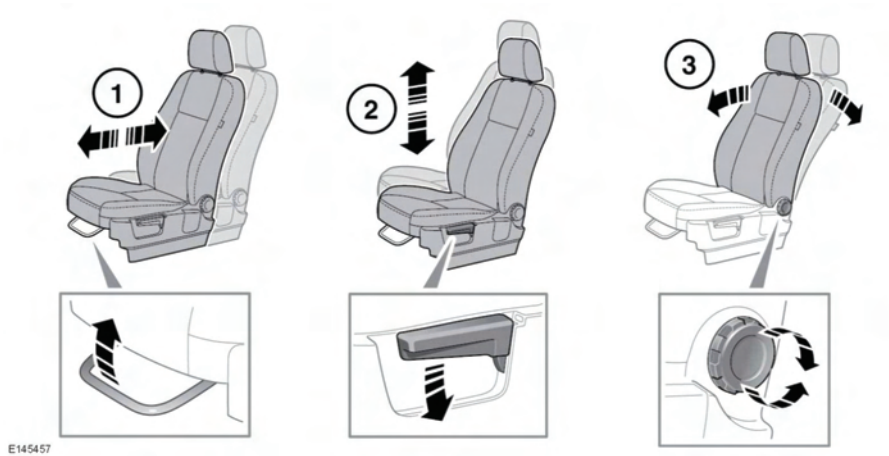
Each rear door can be individually locked by pressing the appropriate locking lever.

To unlock and open a front door, pull the door handle (**2**). To unlock and open a rear door, first operate the lock lever, then pull the door handle.

MISLOCK

When attempting to lock the vehicle, if one or more of the doors, the bonnet or the tailgate are not fully closed, the vehicle will fail to lock and the horn will sound. The vehicle will not fully lock until all doors, the bonnet and the tailgate are completely closed.

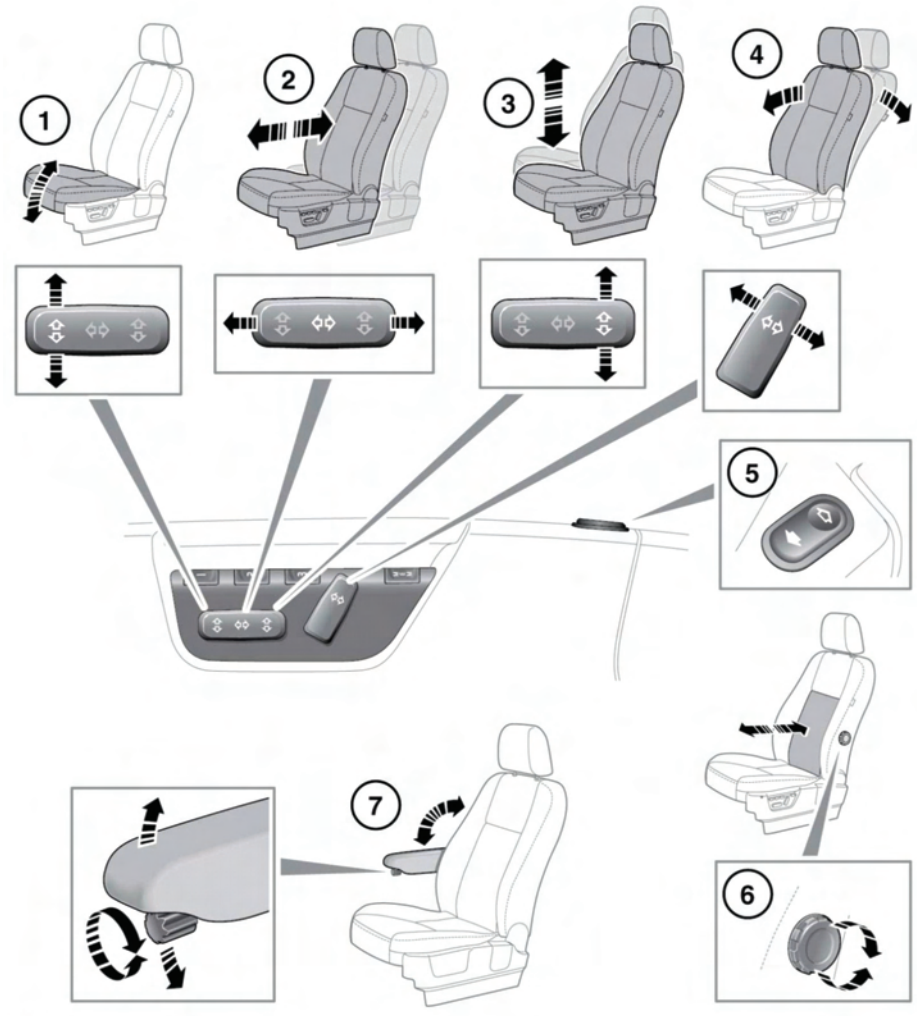
MANUAL SEATS



Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. Doing so could cause loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

1. Fore and aft adjustment.
2. Height adjustment.
3. Backrest adjustment.

ELECTRIC SEATS



E145436

Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. Doing so could cause loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

1. Cushion angle.
2. Forward and rearward.
3. Height.
4. Seat back.
5. Lumbar support (electric).
6. Lumbar support (manual).

7. Armrest.

RESTRICTED SEAT TRAVEL

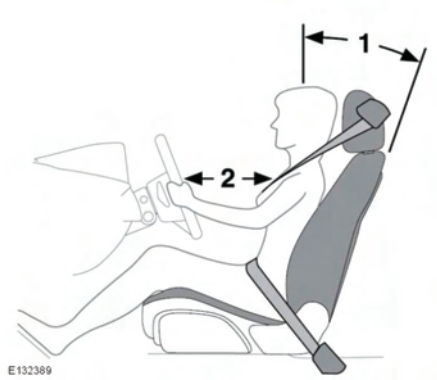
If seat movement stops unexpectedly during adjustment check for, and remove, any obstructions.

Once any obstructions have been removed the seat adjustment mechanism can be reset as follows.

Operate the button again to continue the stalled adjustment and hold in that position for two seconds. When the movement resumes, hold the button until the end of travel in that direction has been reached. The seat position can now be carried out as normal.

Note: *If no obstructions can be seen but normal adjustment cannot be carried out without stalling, contact your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.*

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



The driver and front seat passenger must not ride with the seat fully reclined.

Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving.

The seat, head restraint, seat belt and airbags, all contribute to the protection of the user. Correct use of these components will give you greater protection. Therefore, you should always observe the following points:

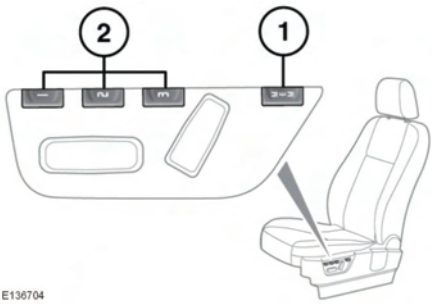
1. Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible and the seatback reclined no more than 30 degrees.

2. Do not move the driver's seat too close to the steering wheel. Ideally, a minimum distance of 250 mm (10 inches) is recommended between the breastbone and the steering wheel airbag cover. Hold the steering wheel in the correct position, with your arms slightly bent.

- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centre line of the head.
- Position the seat belt so that it is mid-way between your neck and your shoulder. Fit the strap tightly across your hips, not across your stomach.
- Ensure that your driving position is comfortable and enables you to maintain full control of the vehicle.

DRIVING POSITION MEMORY

Once you have adjusted the power operated driver's seat and exterior mirrors (see **36, EXTERIOR MIRRORS**) the vehicle can memorise these settings for future use.

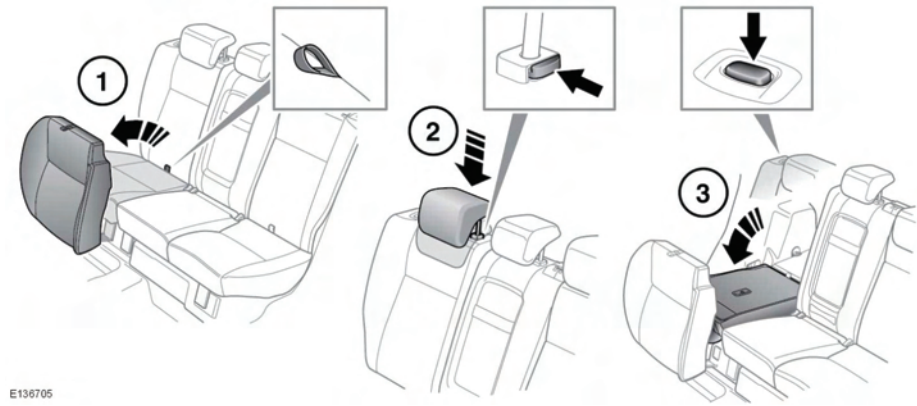


1. Press the memory store (M) button to activate the memory function.
2. Press one of the preset buttons within 5 seconds to memorise the current settings. **MEMORY (1, 2 or 3) SETTINGS SAVED** will be displayed on the message centre, accompanied by an audible chime to confirm the settings have been memorised.
3. To recall a stored position press the relevant preset button. **MEMORY (1, 2 OR 3) RECALLED** will be displayed in the message centre.

A seat position will only be memorised during the 5 second active period.

Any existing settings will be over-written when programming a memory position.

FOLDING AND RAISING THE REAR SEATS



Always ensure that objects carried within the vehicle are secured properly.

Never allow passengers to travel in the load space under any circumstances. All vehicle occupants should be seated correctly, and wear a seat belt at all times when the vehicle is in motion.

Ensure that when the backrest is raised the locking mechanism is fully engaged. If the backrests are not fully locked in place, red markers will be visible around the backrest buttons.

The split folding rear seat can be folded completely to accommodate large loads, or partially to accommodate large loads and still retain seating for passengers.

To fold part or all of the seat:

1. Pull the strap on the required cushion(s), to raise to the vertical position.
2. Fully lower the head restraints.
3. Press the seat backrest release button(s), then lower the backrest(s) until locked into place.

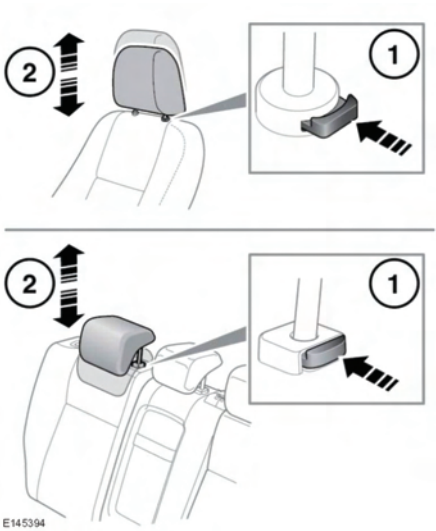
HEAD RESTRAINTS

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centre line of the head. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

Do not drive, or carry passengers with the head restraints removed from occupied seats. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.

Never adjust the head restraints while the vehicle is in motion.

Always store a removed head restraint securely.



1. Press the locking collar to release the head restraint.
2. Whilst pressing the locking collar, move the head restraint up or down to the required position.

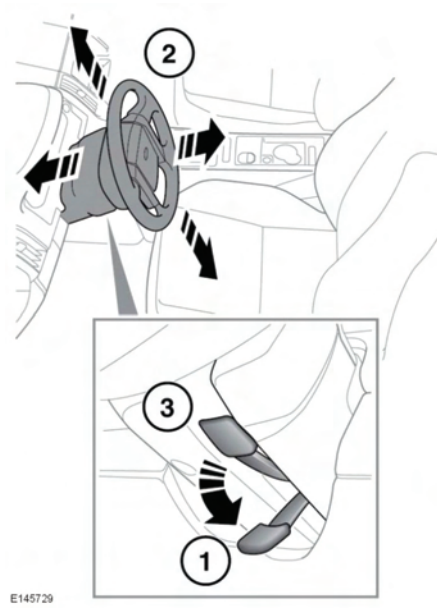
Head restraints may be removed, if required (e.g. to fit larger child seats). Raise the head restraint to its uppermost position and press the locking collar. Lift the restraint out of the seat back.

Ensure the head restraint is refitted before the seat is used by a passenger.

To refit the head restraint, ensure it is facing the correct direction, insert the stems of the head restraint into the sockets and push it downwards until at least the first click.

Note: *See* ***21, CHILD SEATS****, for details on correct child restraint fitment.*

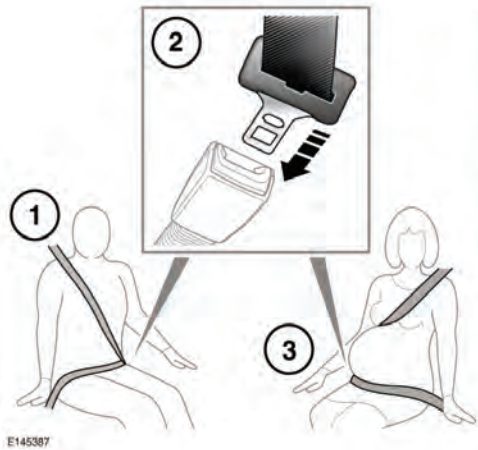
ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

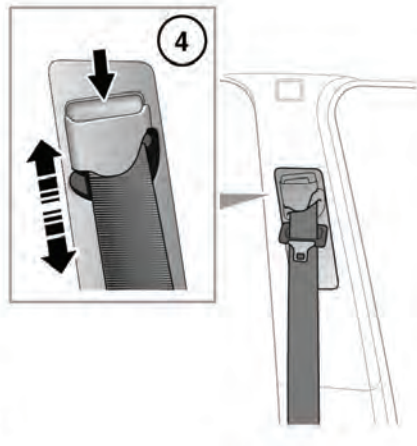


Never adjust the steering column while the vehicle is in motion.

1. Move the lever fully down to unlock the column.
2. Move the steering column up, down, in or out, to the desired position.
3. Move the lever fully up to re-lock the column.

USING THE SEAT BELTS





1. **PUTTING ON A SEAT BELT:** Draw the belt out smoothly and ensure that the belt height, the seat and your position on the seat, are correct.

   Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

   Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

   Belts should not be worn with the straps twisted.

   Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

   The occupants of the front seats should not travel with the seat back at more than 30 degrees from the upright. Doing so will reduce the protection afforded by the seat belt.

   Never place anything between you and the seat belt. It can be dangerous and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in preventing injury.

2. **FASTENING A SEAT BELT:** With the seat belt correctly positioned, place the metal tongue into the buckle nearest to you. Press it in until a click is heard.

   To release the seat belt, press the red button.

   Note: *When releasing the seat belt, it is advisable to hold the belt before pressing the release button. This will prevent the belt from retracting too quickly.*

3. **SEAT BELT USE DURING PREGNANCY**: Position the lap strap comfortably across the hips beneath the abdomen. Place the diagonal part of the seat belt between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen.

   Position the seat belt correctly for the safety of the mother and unborn child. Never wear just the lap strap and never sit on the lap strap whilst using just the shoulder strap. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous, and may increase your risk of serious injury in the event of an accident or during emergency braking.

   Never place anything between you and the seat belt in an attempt to cushion the impact in the event of an accident. It can be dangerous, and will reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in preventing injury.

   Ensure that the seat belt is not slack or twisted.

4. **SEAT BELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT:** Using your finger to depress the release catch and the other underneath to raise and lower the mechanism into the required height. Ensure that the locking mechanism has engaged.

   When correctly positioned the seat belt should cross the collar bone at the mid-point between the neck and end of your shoulder.

   Where possible, rear seat passengers should adjust their seating position to achieve the same seat belt position.

   Ensure that the height is correctly adjusted and the mechanism is locked in place before driving.

The use of comfort clips or devices that would create slack in the seat belt system, is not advised.

No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

SEAT BELT SAFETY

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water.

The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

If any damage, wear, cuts, defects, or impaired operation are noted with the seat belts, the vehicle should be taken to a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer for immediate attention. Do not use the vehicle if the seat belts cannot be operated correctly.

Do not carry hard, fragile, or sharp items between your person and the seat belt.

Seat belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every journey no matter how short.

Never wear just the lap belt or just the shoulder belt of a lap/shoulder diagonal seat belt. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous and may increase your risk of injury.

When using seat belts to restrain items other than occupants, take care to ensure that the belts are not damaged, or exposed to sharp edges.

SEAT BELT CHECKS

Note: *If the vehicle is parked on an incline, the seat belt mechanism may lock. This is not a fault and the belt should be gently eased out from the upper anchorage.*

The seat belts should be inspected regularly to check for fraying, cuts, wear to the webbing and the condition and security of the mechanism, buckles, adjusters and mounting points.

- With the seat belt fastened, give the webbing near the buckle a quick upward pull. The buckle must remain securely locked.
- With the seat belt unfastened, unreel the seat belt to the limit of its travel. Check that it unreels smoothly with no snatches or snags. Allow the belt to fully retract, again checking for smooth operation.
- Partially unreel the seat belt, then hold the tongue plate and give a quick forward pull. The mechanism must lock and prevent any further unreeling.

If any of the seat belts fail to meet those criteria, immediately contact your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

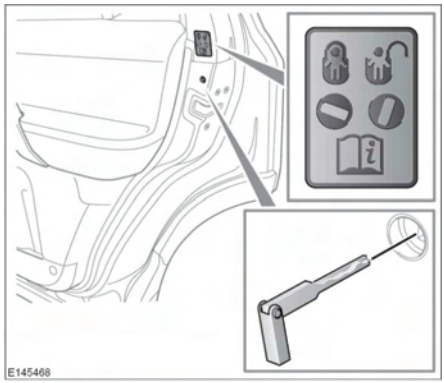
SEAT BELT PRE-TENSIONERS

The seat belt pre-tensioners activate in conjunction with the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) to provide additional protection in the event of a severe frontal impact. They automatically reduce any slack in a seat belt to reduce forward movement of a front seat occupant.

The seat belt pre-tensioners will activate only once and then must be replaced. Failure to replace them will reduce the effectiveness of the SRS in reducing the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

After any impact, have the seat belts and pre-tensioners checked and, if necessary, replaced by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



CHILD SAFETY LOCKS: If children are to be carried in the rear seat positions, it is recommended that the rear door interior handles are disabled.

To change the child lock settings:-

- Open the door to access the child safety lock.
- Insert the emergency key into the slot, and rotate a quarter of a turn to enable or disable the interior door handle as required.

CHILD SEATS

For optimum safety, children should travel in the rear of the vehicle at all times; front passenger seat travel is not recommended. However, if it is essential that a child travels in the front (not permitted in Australia), set the vehicle seat fully rearward and seat the child in an approved forward-facing child seat. Do not use a rear-facing child seat - an inflating airbag could impact with the seat and cause serious injury.

Do not use a forward facing child seat until the child using it is above the minimum weight of 9 kg (20 lb.) and able to sit up unaided. Up to the age of two, a child's spine and neck are not sufficiently developed to avoid injury in a frontal impact.

Do not allow a baby or infant to be held or carried on the lap. The force of a crash can increase effective body weight by as much as thirty times, making it impossible to hold onto the child.

Children typically require the use of a booster seat appropriate to their age and size, thereby enabling the seat belts to be properly fitted, reducing the risk of injury in a crash. Children could be endangered in a crash if their child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle.

Do not use a child seat that hooks over the seat back. This type of seat cannot be satisfactorily secured and is unlikely to be safe for your child.

The seat belts fitted to your vehicle are designed for adults and larger children. For their safety it is very important for all infants and children under 12 years of age to be restrained in a suitable child safety seat appropriate to their age and size.

If it is essential that a child travels in the front passenger seat (and national legislation permits this) Land Rover recommends that the following preparations are made before fitting the child restraint.

- Disable the front passenger airbag.
- Adjust the front passenger seat fully rearwards.
- Adjust the lumbar support to its minimum support position.

- Adjust the seat cushion to its highest position. If cushion angle adjustment is possible, adjust it to its lowest position.
- Adjust the seat back to the fully upright position.
- Adjust the seat belt upper anchorage to its lowest position.

Extreme hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!



This symbol, affixed to the end of the fascia on the passenger side, warns against the use of a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, when a front passenger airbag is fitted and operational.

CHILD SEAT POSITIONING

When installing a child seat in the rear, the front seat must be moved forward and upwards to install any rear-facing child seat.

Care must be taken not to load any part of the child seat when repositioning the front seat. The space available for front seat occupants will be reduced by the installation of any rearward-facing child seat.

Crash statistics show that children are safest when properly restrained in a child or infant restraint system that is secured in a rear seating position.

RECOMMENDED CHILD SEATS

Child size/age	Recommended seat
Groups 0 and 0+	Britax/Römer Baby Safe Plus
Group I	Britax/Römer Duo Plus
Group II and III	Britax/Römer Kid Plus

CHILD RESTRAINT CHECK LIST

Every time a child travels in the vehicle observe the following:-

- Use appropriate child restraints.
- Carefully follow the restraint system manufacturer's instructions.
- Adjust the harnesses for every child on every trip.
- Ensure that all slack is removed from the adult seat belt.
- Always attach the top tether when installing an ISOFIX seat.
- Always check the security of the child restraint.
- Do not dress a child in bulky clothing, or place any objects/padding between the child and the restraint.
- Regularly check the fit and condition of child restraints. If the fit is poor, or wear/damage is visible replace the restraint immediately.
- Set a good example - always wear your seat belt.

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

ISOFIX ANCHOR POINTS (not Australia)

Do not attempt to fit ISOFIX restraints to the centre rear seating position. The anchor bars are not designed to hold an ISOFIX restraint in this position.

If the restraint is not correctly anchored, there is a significant risk of injury to the child in the event of a collision or emergency braking.

Both of the outer seat positions on the rear seat are equipped to accept ISOFIX restraints.



This symbol is shown on a label sewn into the seats to indicate the position of the ISOFIX lower anchorages.

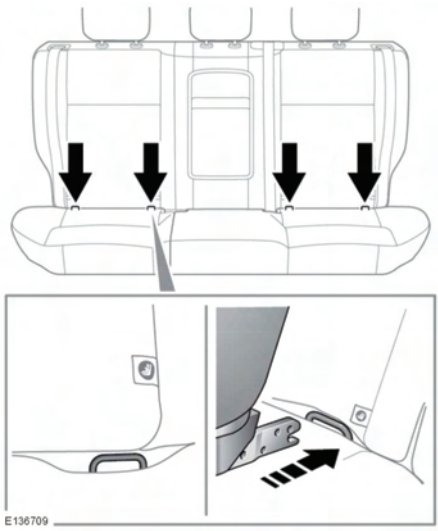
Mass group as shown on child restraint	Size classes	Fixtures	Rear outboard seats
Carrycot	F/G	ISO L1/L2	X
0 = Up to 10 kg (22 lb) 0-9 months	E	ISO R1	IL*
0+ = Up to 13 kg (29 lb) 0-18 months	C/D/E	ISO R1/R2/R3	IL*
I = 9 to 18 kg (20 to 40 lb) 9 months - 4 years	C/D A/B1/B	ISO R2/R3 ISO F2/F2X/F3	X IUF
II = 15 to 25 kg (33 to 55 lb) 4-9 years	N/A	N/A	N/A
III = 22 to 36 kg (49 to 80 lb) 8-12 years	N/A	N/A	N/A

- IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in the mass group.
- IL = These ISOFIX child restraint systems are of the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories.
- X = Not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint fitment in this mass group.
- * = Child seat suitable for use in these locations, is the Britax/Römer Baby Safe Plus ISOFIX

Note: *Ages given are approximate. In case of doubt, the child's weight not age should be used when considering an appropriate child seat.*

Note: *The information contained in the table may not be applicable to all countries. If you are in any doubt regarding the type and fitment of child seats seek advice from your Dealer/ Authorised Repairer.*

INSTALLING ISOFIX CHILD RESTRAINTS



To install an ISOFIX child seat:-

1. Raise or remove the head restraint. See**16, HEAD RESTRAINTS**.
2. Locate the ISOFIX locking mechanism.
3. Slide the child seat into the locking mechanism.
4. Test the security of the child restraint. To do this, attempt to pull the restraint away from the vehicle seat and twist the restraint from side to side. Even if the restraint appears secure, you should still check the anchor points visually, to ensure correct attachment.

Note: *ISOFIX child restraints are only fitted to the second row of seats.*

Note: *Always ensure that if an upper tether is provided, it is fitted and tightened correctly.*

TETHER ANCHORAGE POINTS

⚠ **Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.**

⚠ **Always follow the child seat or restraint system manufacturer's instructions when fitting tether straps.**

⚠ **When fitting a child seat or restraint system, always pass the tether strap over the top of the seat back and beneath the head restraint.**

⚠ **If a child seat or restraint system is to be fitted to the centre seating position, the centre armrest must be in the stowed position (folded into the seat).**

Your vehicle is equipped with anchorage points on the back of the second row seat frames. These should be used to attach straps from child seats or restraint systems.

Note: *A tether anchorage is provided for the centre seat position. Do not use this anchor position with an ISOFIX child seat.*

INSTALLING TETHER ANCHORAGE CHILD RESTRAINTS

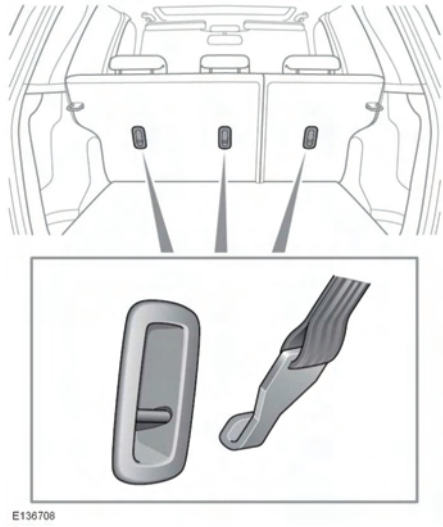
⚠ **Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.**

⚠ **Always follow the child seat or restraint system manufacturer's instructions when fitting tether straps.**

When fitting a child seat or restraint system, always pass the tether strap over the top of the seat back and beneath the head restraint.

If a child seat or restraint system is to be fitted to the centre seating position, the centre armrest must be in the stowed position (folded into the seat).

Your vehicle is equipped with anchorage points on the back of the second row seat frames. These should be used to attach straps from child seats or restraint systems.



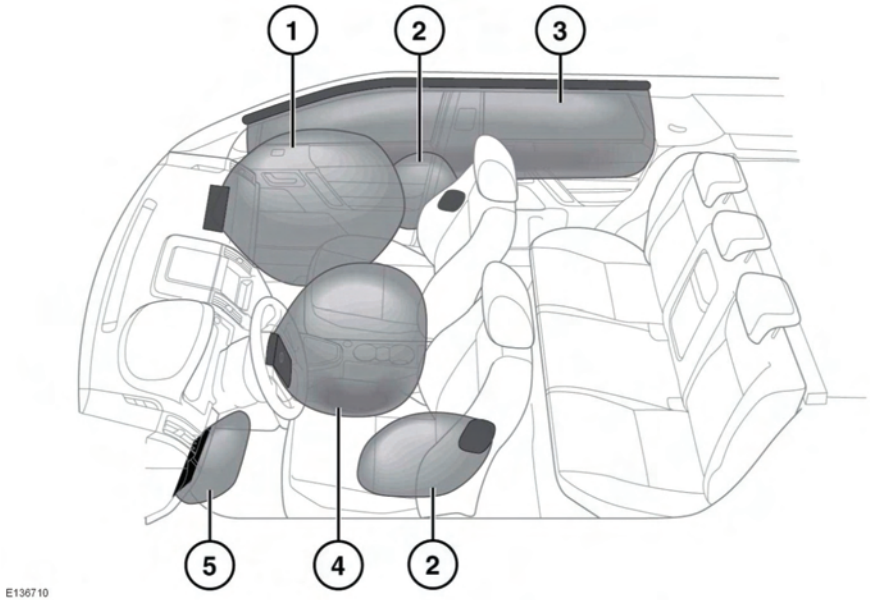
Note: *A tether anchorage is provided for the centre seat position. Do not use this anchor position with an ISOFIX child seat.*

1. Install the child restraint securely in one of the rear seating positions.
2. Pass the tether strap over the seat back and beneath the head restraint.
3. Attach the tether strap hook to the tether anchor point on the back of the seat. Ensure that the tether strap hook is facing the correct way (see illustration).
4. Tighten the tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

BOOSTER SEATS

In a situation where a child is too large to fit into a child safety seat but is still too small to safely use just the three point belt, a booster seat is recommended for maximum safety. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for fitting and use, and adjust the seat belt to suit.

AIRBAGS



1. Passenger front airbag.
2. Side airbags.
3. Main curtain airbag.
4. Driver's front airbag.
5. Knee bolster airbag.

Note: *The general location of airbags fitted to the vehicle are marked by the word AIRBAG.*

Always contact your Dealer/Authorised Repairer if:

- An airbag inflates.
- The front or sides of the vehicle are damaged.
- Any part of the Airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) shows signs of cracking or damage, including trim covering airbags.
- The amber airbag warning lamp illuminates.

FRONT AIRBAGS

The front passenger and driver air bags are able to deploy in two stages, depending on the severity of the frontal impact. In a severe impact, the air bags inflate fully to offer maximum protection. In a lesser impact, full deployment is not required, so the airbags are partially inflated. The knee bolster airbag will always fully inflate.

SIDE AND CURTAIN AIRBAGS

The seat mounted side airbags are designed to protect the thorax region of the torso and will deploy only in the event of a side impact and then, only on the side of the impact.

The curtain air bags are deployed in side impact and rollover events, providing greater protection from serious head injuries. They deflate at a slower rate than the front or side airbags.

AIRBAG OPERATION

For the airbags to operate correctly the roof lining and door post trims must be in good condition, correctly fitted, and free from obstruction. Any damage, wear, or incorrect fitment should be referred to your Dealer/ Authorised Repairer as soon as possible for examination and repair.

Do not allow passengers to obstruct the operation of the airbags by placing any part of their person, or any objects, in contact with, or close to, an airbag module. Only use approved accessories (e.g. seat covers).

Ensure that a gap is maintained between the side of the vehicle, and the head and torso. This will enable unobstructed inflation of the curtain, and seat mounted side airbags.

Airbags inflate at high speeds. To minimise the risk of injury, ensure that all vehicle occupants wear correctly positioned seat belts, sit correctly in the seats, and position the seats as far back as practical.

Airbag inflation takes place instantaneously, and cannot protect against the effects of secondary impacts. Under these circumstances the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.

Phone systems should only be installed by qualified persons familiar with the operation of, and requirements for, vehicles fitted with SRS. If you are in any doubt, seek advice from your Dealer/Authorised repairer.

Airbag deployment is dependent on the rate at which the passenger compartment changes velocity following the collision. Circumstances affecting different collisions (vehicle speed, angle of impact, type and size of object hit, etc.), vary considerably and will affect the rate of deceleration accordingly.

The Supplementary Restraint System components include:-

- SRS warning indicator.
- Rotary coupler.
- Airbag modules.
- Seat belt pre-tensioners (front seats).
- Airbag diagnostic control unit.
- Crash sensors.
- Airbag wiring harness.

Airbags cannot deploy correctly if they are obstructed. Examples of obstructions are:-

- Any part of an occupant's body in contact with, or close to, an airbag cover.
- Objects placed on, or close to, an airbag cover.
- Clothing, sun screens, or other material hanging from grab handles.
- Clothing, cushions, or other material, covering seat mounted airbags.
- Seat covers which are not approved by Land Rover, or specifically designed for use with seat mounted airbags.

This list is not exhaustive, and it remains the responsibility of the driver and passengers to ensure that the airbags are not obstructed in any way.

Note: *The airbags and SRS are not designed to operate as a result of:*

- Rear impacts.
- Minor front impacts.
- Minor side impacts.
- Heavy braking.

- Driving over bumps and pot holes.

High speed impacts may cause serious injury or death irrespective of safety features fitted to a vehicle.

The airbag SRS cannot provide protection in some types of impact. Under these circumstances the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.

AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT EFFECTS

When an airbag inflates, a fine powder is released. This is normal and not an indication of a malfunction. The powder may cause irritation to the skin and should be thoroughly flushed from eyes and any cuts or abrasions.

Airbags inflate at high speed and can cause injuries. To minimise the risk of injury, ensure that all occupants wear correctly positioned seat belts, sit correctly in the seats and position the seats as far back as is practicable.

Airbag deployment is accompanied by a very loud noise which may cause discomfort and temporary loss of hearing.

After inflation, some airbag components will be very hot. Do not touch the airbag components until they have cooled sufficiently.

AIRBAG WARNING LAMP



The airbag warning indicator is mounted in the instrument pack, and will illuminate as a bulb check when the ignition is turned on.

If the warning lamp indicates that a fault is present in the system, do not use a child restraint on the front passenger seat.

If any of the following warning indicator conditions occur, the vehicle should be checked by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer immediately.

- The warning indicator fails to illuminate when the ignition is turned on.
- The warning indicator fails to extinguish within 6 seconds of the ignition being turned on.
- The warning indicator illuminates at any time other than the bulb check, when the ignition is turned on.

AIRBAG SERVICE INFORMATION

Do not attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with any part of the SRS. This includes wiring or components in the vicinity of SRS components. Doing so may cause the system to trigger, or render the system inoperative.

Do not use any electrical test equipment or devices in the vicinity of SRS components or wiring. Doing so may cause the system to trigger, or render the system inoperative.

All of the following operations should only be carried out by a Dealer/Authorised Repairer, or suitably qualified person:-

- Removal or repair of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any SRS components.
- Installation of electrical, or electronic, equipment and accessories.
- Modification to the front or sides of the vehicle exterior.

- Attachment of accessories to the front or sides of the vehicle.

DISABILITY MODIFICATIONS

Occupants with disabilities which may require modification of the vehicle, must contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer before any modifications are made.

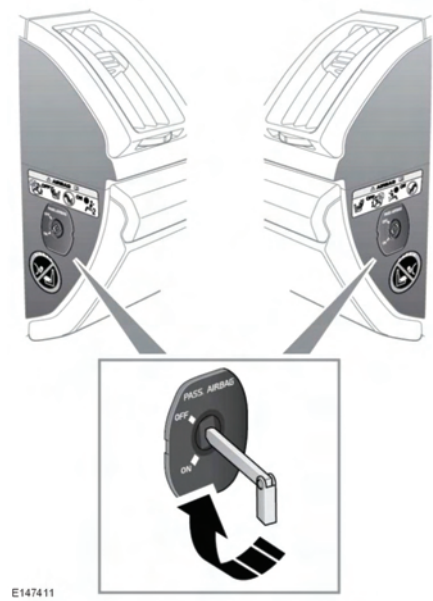
DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG

Note: *The passenger airbag should be disabled only when a rearward facing child restraint is fitted to the front passenger seat.*

⚠ **Crash test data and statistics show that the safest place for a child to be restrained is in a child seat correctly fitted to the vehicle's rear seat.**

⚠ **Do not use a child restraint on a seat protected by an operational airbag in front of it. Doing so presents a high risk of death or serious injury to the child in the event of an accident.**

⚠ **Do not fit a child restraint to the front passenger seat if the SRS warning light illuminates continuously with the ignition on.**



To disable the passenger airbag:-

1. Remove the emergency key blade from the remote control.
2. Insert the end of the emergency key blade into the slot in the switch and rotate the switch to the off position.

⚠ **As soon as the child seat is removed from the front passenger seat, the airbag must be turned on. Failure to do so will put any front seat passengers at greater risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.**

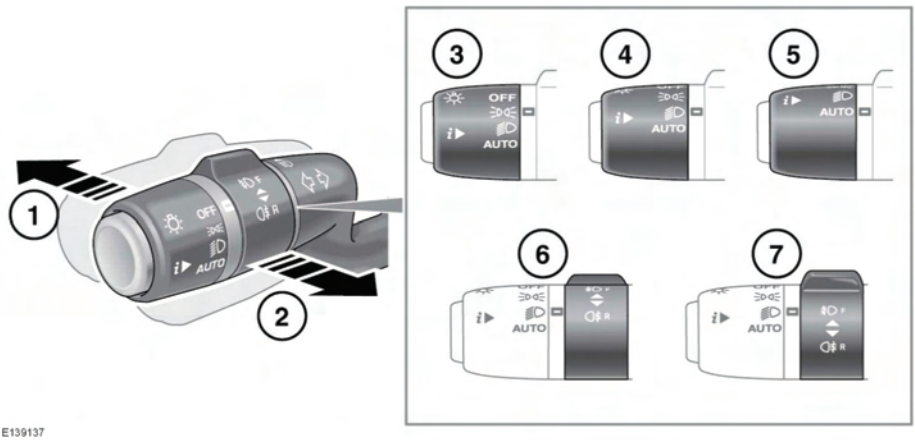


When checking the operational status of the front passenger airbag, ensure that the ignition is switched on.

The passenger airbag operational status indicator illuminates yellow when the airbag has been disabled.

Note: *The indicator will only illuminate when the ignition is turned on or the engine is running.*

LIGHTING CONTROL



E139137

1. With the headlamps on, push the control away from the steering wheel to select high beam. The warning lamp will illuminate. See **49, HIGH BEAM (BLUE)**.

   Note: *Do not use high beam where it may distract or dazzle other road users.*

2. Pull the control towards the steering wheel and release to flash the high beam on and off. The high beam will remain on for as long as the switch is held.
3. Side lights.
4. Headlamps.
5. **AUTO**. With Auto lamps selected, when ambient light fades and the ignition is on, the side lights, tail lamps, low beam headlamps and licence plate lamps will switch on automatically. Headlamp courtesy delay and Windscreen wiper detection may also be activated.

   Note: *Low ambient light levels, caused by adverse weather conditions, may also cause Auto lamps to activate.*

6. Rear fog lamps. Operates only while side lights, headlamps or Auto lamps are selected. Turn the collar towards the steering wheel and release. The warning lamp will illuminate. See **48, REAR FOG LAMP (AMBER)**.
7. Front fog lamps. Operates only while side lights, headlamps or Auto lamps are selected. Turn the collar away from the steering wheel and release. The warning lamp will illuminate. See **49, FRONT FOG LAMPS (GREEN)**.

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

With the lighting control in the Off position (**1**), Daytime running lamps will switch on automatically under the following conditions:

- The engine is running.
- The gear selector is out of park.

- The parking brake is not applied (is released) - market dependent.



Unless required or prohibited by law, daytime running lamps can be disabled or enabled by your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

HEADLAMP COURTESY DELAY

This feature operates whenever the lamps master switch is in the AUTO (**5**) position and the ignition is turned off. The headlamps will remain illuminated for up to 240 seconds.

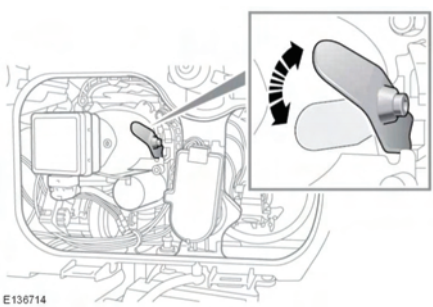
Note: *The time delay may be changed via the Vehicle settings menu. See* ***44, WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES****.*

Courtesy lamps can be switched off at any time by pressing the headlamps button on the Smart Key.

HEADLAMPS - CONDENSATION

Misting of lamp lenses can occur under some atmospheric conditions. This will not affect the performance of the lamps and will clear during normal operation.

HEADLAMPS - DRIVING ABROAD



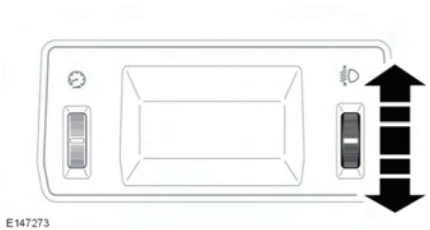
Note: *The headlamps must be removed in order to change the beam pattern. See* ***147, HEADLAMP REMOVAL146, CHANGING A BULB****.*

The tourist lever allows you to adjust the headlamps to the correct beam pattern for driving on the left or right hand side of the road.

When new, the lever will be set to the correct position for the country in which the vehicle is sold. To change the pattern for driving on the alternate side of the road, move the lever to the alternate position.

Note: *When changing the beam pattern using the lever, ensure that you change the lever position on both headlamps.*

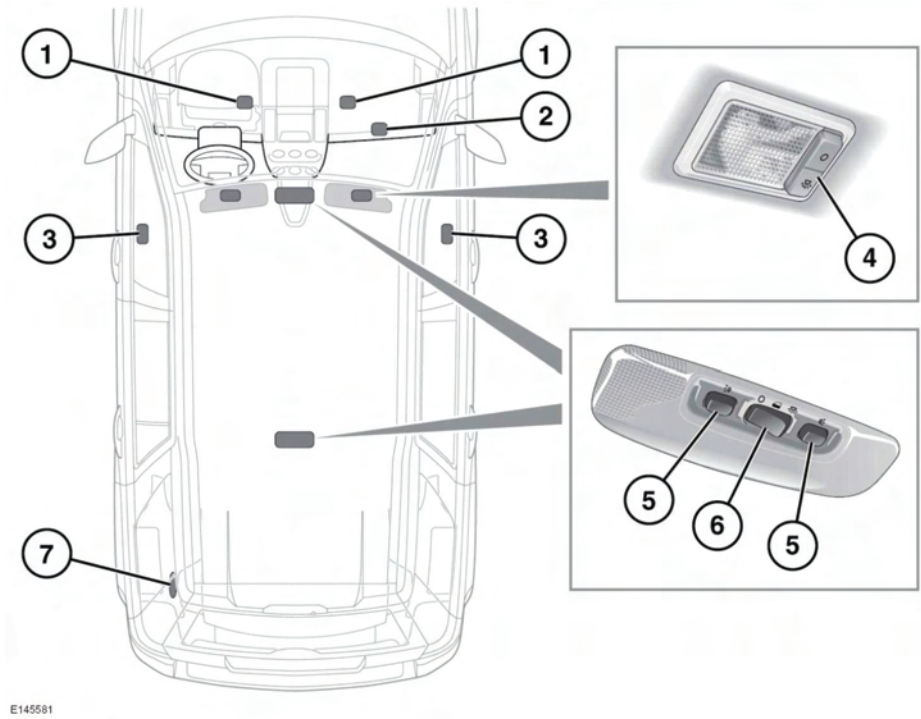
HEADLAMP LEVELLING



Use the headlamp levelling control to account for vehicle loading changes.

Vehicle load	Switch position
Driver only	0
Driver and front seat passenger	0
Driver and passengers in all seats	Rotate down one position from 0.
Maximum gross vehicle weight	Rotate down two positions from 0.
Maximum rear axle load	Rotate down three positions from 0.

INTERIOR LIGHTS

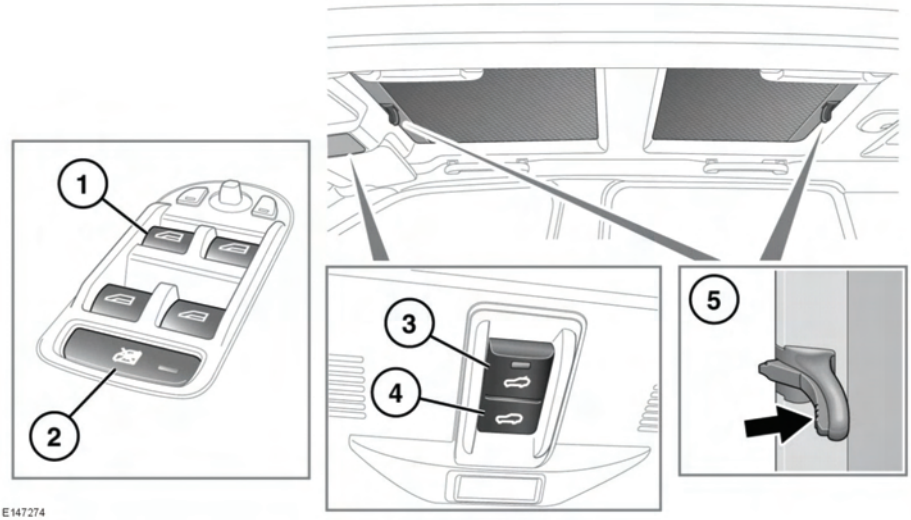


E145581

1. Footwell lamps.
2. Glovebox lamp.
3. Puddle lamps.
4. Sun visor lamps.
5. Map light controls (on/off).
6. Main interior lamp control (on/off/Auto).

   To activate or deactivate Auto mode, press and hold for longer than 3 seconds. In Auto mode the lamps will illuminate when a door is opened.
7. Luggage compartment lamp.

ELECTRIC WINDOWS



1. Window switches.

   Note: *The windows will operate for 5 minutes after the engine is switched off, as long as none of the doors are opened.*

2. Rear window isolator button.

   If children are carried in the rear seats, the isolator switch should be used to prevent operation of the windows. If the windows are operated by young children there is a risk of serious injury or death.

3. Sunroof close/tilt switch:

   Wherever possible remove any snow, ice, dirt, and leaves etc. from the sunroof mechanism before closing. Failure to do so may damage the sunroof mechanism.

   - With the roof closed, briefly press to tilt the sunroof open.
   - With the roof fully open, briefly press to close the roof.

   Press the button again to stop movement.

4. Sunroof open/close switch:
   - With the roof closed, briefly press to fully open. Press again to stop movement.
   - With the roof tilted open, press and hold to close the roof. Releasing the switch will stop roof movement.

   Note: *The sunroof will operate for 30 seconds after the ignition is turned off, provided that a front door is not opened.*

5. Sun blind:
   - To open, push upwards on the textured part of the handle. Then, slide the blind into the panel between the sunroof and the headlining.
   - To close the sun blind, pull across the aperture until it locks in place.

WINDOW ANTI-TRAP PROTECTION

The anti-trap mechanism does not operate when closing the sunroof from the tilted position. The sunroof can cause serious injury should a body part become trapped. Always ensure that the sunroof is free from obstructions before closing.

Before closing a window or the sunroof, ensure that no occupants have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an anti-trap system death or serious injury could occur.

Anti-trap protection will stop window or sunroof movement if an obstruction or resistance is detected. Check the window or sunroof and its aperture and remove any obstructions (e.g. ice, etc.).

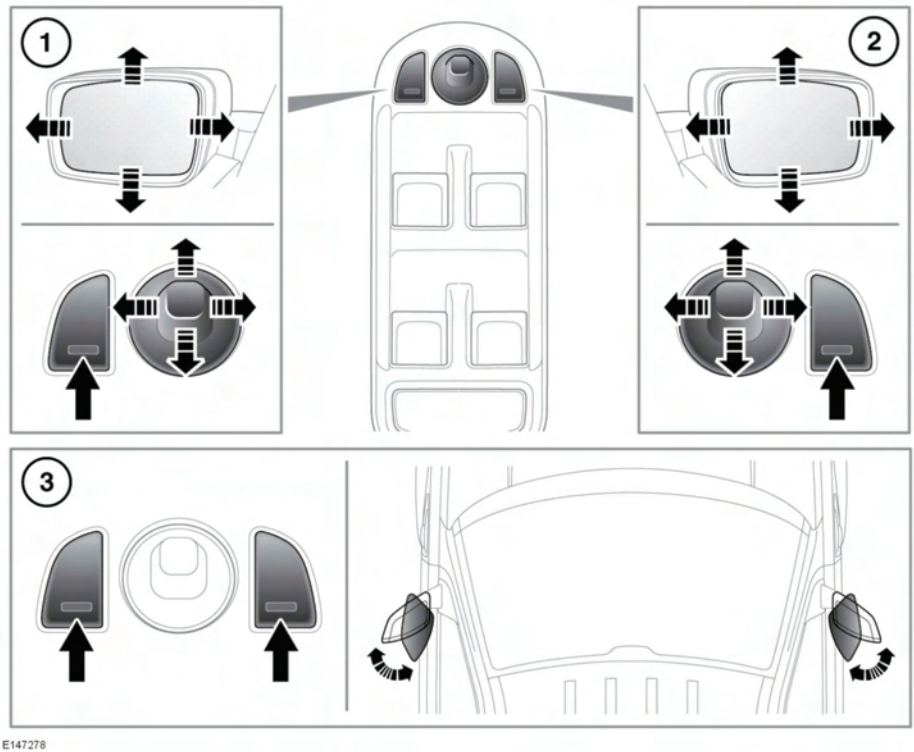
If it is still necessary to raise the window or close the sunroof, the override procedure is as follows:

1. Attempt to close the window/sunroof, anti-trap will prevent closure and lower the window/open the sunroof slightly.
2. Within ten seconds attempt to raise the window/close the sunroof again, anti-trap will prevent closure and lower the window/open the sunroof slightly.
3. Attempt to close the window/sunroof for a third time, this time hold the switch in the close position. Hold until closed.

Note: *If this procedure fails to remove the blockage, the window operation may need to be reset. See* ***154, WINDOW RESET****.*

Note: *The sunroof anti-trap mechanism works differently and does not require reset if activated. See* ***154, SUNROOF RESET****.*

EXTERIOR MIRRORS



1. Left mirror adjustment.
2. Right mirror adjustment.

   Note: *The mirrors can be adjusted for up to five minutes when the ignition is switched off, provided the driver's door is not opened.*
3. Press both switches together to fold/unfold the mirrors.

Note: *If the mirrors are manually folded or knocked into the folded position accidentally, the mirror head will be loose. To re-engage the mechanism, fold, then unfold the mirrors using the switches.*

A thermal cut-out which will temporarily disable the powerfold feature if the switches are operated repeatedly.

Powerfold will only operate if the vehicle is stationary, or travelling at 20 km/h (12 mph) or less.



The mirrors can be configured by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer to automatically fold when the vehicle is locked, and unfold when it is unlocked.

MIRROR DIP WHEN REVERSING

Selecting reverse gear will cause the door mirrors to automatically adjust, providing an improved viewing angle for reversing.

The exact dipped position can be adjusted when the mirrors are dipped. The next time reverse is selected, the newly adjusted position will be selected.

When the gear selector is moved out of reverse, the mirrors will return to their previous position.

Note: *If vehicle speed exceeds 7 km/h (4 mph) in reverse, the mirrors will return to their normal driving position for enhanced visibility.*

The automatic mirror dip feature can be enabled or disabled using the **Vehicle Set-Up** menu. See **43, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

GARAGE DOOR TRANSCEIVER

Do not use the transceiver with any garage door opener that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature as required by safety standards.

When programming the transceiver to a garage door opener or entry gate, ensure the area is clear. This will prevent potential harm or damage as the gate or garage door will activate during the programme.

This device may suffer from interference if operated in the vicinity of a mobile or fixed station transmitter. This interference is likely to affect the hand-held transmitter as well as the in-car transceiver.

The door transceiver is located in the rear-view mirror. It can be programmed to transmit the radio frequencies of up to three different transmitters, which can be used to operate garage doors, entry gates, home lighting, security systems or other radio frequency operated devices.

Although this section mainly describes the procedures for a garage door opener, it equally applies to the previously mentioned applications.

In some countries, this feature is also known as the HomeLink™ Universal Transceiver.

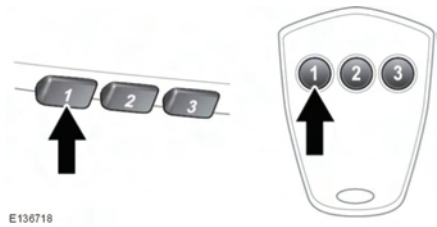
For further information, see **40, INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE**.

BEFORE PROGRAMMING

When programming a device that may require you to press and re-press the hand-held transmitter (cycle), unplug the device during the cycling process to prevent possible motor failure.

For best results, fit a new battery to the hand-held transmitter of the garage door opener (or other device) before programming. If your garage door opener receiver (located in the garage) is equipped with an antenna, ensure that the antenna is hanging straight down.

PROGRAMMING



With the engine switched off;

1. Ensure that the ignition system is on.
2. Hold the end of the original garage door opener hand-held transmitter 50 to 150 mm (2 to 6 inches) away from the transceiver in the rear-view mirror, keeping the indicator lamp in view.
3. Using both hands, simultaneously press and hold both the chosen transceiver button on the rear-view mirror, as shown above, and the hand-held transmitter button. Keep both buttons pressed. The indicator lamp will flash slowly at first and then change to a fast flash. When the indicator lamp flashes rapidly, release both buttons. The rapid flashing lamp indicates successful programming.
4. If, after 60 seconds, the indicator lamp does not flash rapidly, release both the transceiver and the hand-held transmitter buttons and repeat the procedure starting with Step **2**. Position the hand-held transmitter at a different angle and/or distance.

5. Press and hold the programmed garage door opener button and observe the indicator lamp.
   - If the indicator is continuous, programming is complete. Your device should operate when the garage door opener button is pressed and held for approximately 1 to 2 seconds and then released.
   - If the indicator lamp blinks rapidly for two seconds and then illuminates continuously, proceed with the following programming instructions for rolling code device equipment.

TO ERASE ALL PROGRAMMING

For first time programming, ensure that the engine is switched off:

1. Ensure that the ignition is on (but with the engine switched off).
2. Press and hold the two outer buttons on the transceiver in the rear-view mirror. Keep the buttons pressed until the indicator lamp begins to flash (this will take approximately 20 seconds), then release the buttons.

All memories in the garage door opener have now been cleared.

Note: *Do not perform this procedure when programming the additional garage door opener buttons.*

ROLLING CODE DEVICE EQUIPMENT PROGRAMMING

Note: *The assistance of a second person, may make the following steps quicker and easier. Once the button has been pressed there are only 30 seconds in which to complete Step* ***3****.*

1. At the garage door opener receiver (motor head unit) in the garage, locate the learn or smart button/switch.
   - The name of the button or switch may vary between manufacturers.
2. Press and release the learn or smart button.
3. Return to the vehicle and firmly press and hold the programmed garage door opener button for two seconds and release.
4. Repeat the press, hold, release sequence three times to complete the programming process.

The garage door opener in the rear-view mirror should now activate the rolling code device.

REPROGRAMMING A SINGLE GARAGE DOOR OPENER BUTTON

To programme a device to a previously programmed button:

1. Press and hold the desired pre-programmed garage door opener button for at least 20 seconds, but no longer than 30 seconds, until the indicator lamp begins to flash.
2. Without releasing the rear-view mirror button, position the hand-held transmitter approximately 50 to 150 mm (2 to 6 inches) away from the transceiver in the rear-view mirror, keeping the indicator lamp in view.
3. Carry out Step **3** of **Programming**.

ENTRY GATE PROGRAMMING

The technology of some entry gates requires you to press and re-press (cycle) the hand-held transmitter button every two seconds during programming.

Continue to press and hold the desired rear-view mirror button while you cycle your hand-held transmitter until the indicator lamp flashes rapidly.

INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE

It is recommended that when you sell or dispose of the vehicle, the programmed transceiver buttons be erased for security purposes.

For information on the range of available compatible products or accessories, or for assistance, you should contact your Dealer/ Authorised Repairer.

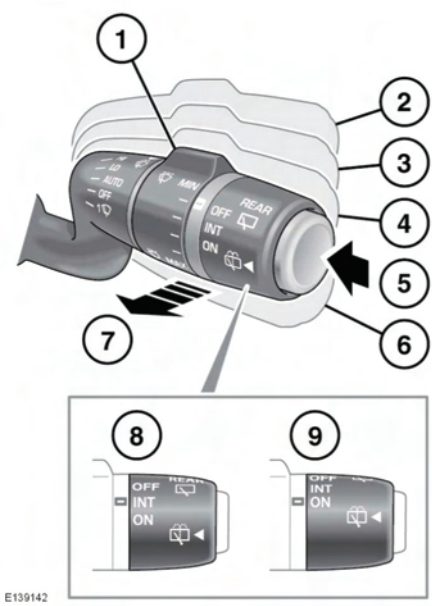
You can also contact the supplier's helpline on **0 0800 0466 354 65**. This toll-free number can be called from anywhere within Europe. No separate country code is required (the first zero is not required when calling from within Germany).

Contact can also be made via the internet. The website address is www.eurohomelink.com. The e-mail address is: **info@eurohomelink.com**.

Note: *Keep the original transmitter for future use or programming procedures if, for example, you purchase a new vehicle.*

Note: *The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorised modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

WIPER OPERATION



1. Rotate the collar to adjust the intermittent period. The intermittent delay period will vary and is controlled by either vehicle speed or a rain sensor. The control must be in position (**4**) to be operational.
2. High speed wipe.
3. Low speed wipe.
4. In this position intermittent wipe is controlled by either a rain sensor or vehicle speed. The rain sensor is located at the upper edge of the windscreen becomes active and will determine when the wipers are required to operate. If the rain sensor is not enabled by your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer, intermittent wipe will operate in conjunction with the setting of control (**1**).
5. Rear window wash/wipe. Press and hold to operate the rear washer and wiper. The wiper will operate for two further wipes after the button is released. After a few seconds a drip wipe will clear any residual water.
6. Single wipe of windscreen, or hold down for further continuous wipes.
7. Windscreen wash/wipe. Pull and hold to operate the front washers and wipers. The wipers will operate for three further wipes after the stalk is released. After a few seconds a drip wipe will clear any residual water.
8. INT - rear wiper, intermittent operation. The intermittent delay period is controlled by adjusting the collar (**1**). The delay period and number of wipes will then be adjusted automatically depending on vehicle speed.
9. ON - rear wiper, continuous operation.

Do not operate the windscreen wipers on a dry screen.

In freezing or very hot conditions, ensure that the wipers have not stuck to the glass.

Remove any snow, ice or frost from the screen, around the wiper arms and blades and the screen scuttle, before operating the wipers.

Note: *Front wipers will not operate while the bonnet is open and vehicle speed is below 3 km/h (2 mph).*

Note: *If wiper blades become stuck or jammed, an electronic cut-out will temporarily halt wiper operation. If this happens, switch off the wipers and the ignition. Clear any obstructions and free the wiper blades, before attempting to switch on the ignition.*



Speed-dependent intermittent wipe and drip wipe on the front screen and intermittent wipe on the rear screen can be enabled/disabled by a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

SPEED-DEPENDENT MODE

If vehicle speed drops below 8 km/h (5 mph) with the wipers operating, the wipers will switch to the next lowest speed. When vehicle speed increases to over 8 km/h (5 mph), the original wiper speed setting is restored automatically.



This feature can be enabled/disabled by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

In vehicles not fitted with a rain sensor, the frequency of intermittent wipe adjusts according to vehicle speed.

The intermittent delay period can be adjusted via the collar on the wiper stalk, but will also reduce automatically as vehicle speed increases.



This feature can be enabled/disabled by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

RAIN SENSOR



Ensure that the wipers are switched off before entering a car wash. If the rain sensitive wipers operate during the car washing process, damage may occur to the wiper mechanism.

The rain sensor is able to detect the presence and amount of rain/dirt/snow on the windscreen and automatically activates the windscreen wipers accordingly. Static droplets may not be detected on initial start-up. A single wipe should be used to clear the screen.

To activate the rain sensitive wipers, move the wiper stalk to the rain sensor position and adjust the sensitivity control as required (see **41, WIPER OPERATION**). When rain sensitive wipers are activated and when sensitivity is increased, a single wipe will operate.

HEADLAMP WASHERS

If the headlamps are on, and there is sufficient liquid in the washer reservoir, operating the screen wash will also power-wash the headlamps.

The headlamp power wash will operate on every fifth operation of the screen washer, provided the headlamps are still switched on and approximately 10 minutes have elapsed since the last headlamp wash.

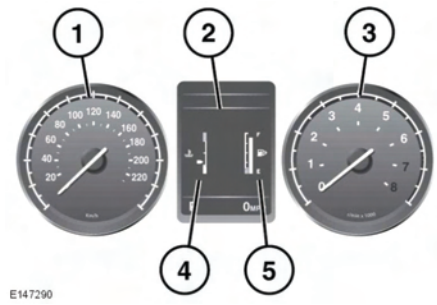
Switching the headlamps or ignition off and back on again, will reset the cycle.

Note: *The headlamp washers are inhibited when the washer fluid reservoir level is low.*

WINTER PARK POSITION

The wipers can be set to park in a higher position than normal. This allows the wiper blades to be lifted from the screen to prevent freezing. The 'Wipers winter park' option can be selected from the **Vehicle Set-Up** menu. See **43, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

INSTRUMENT PANEL



1. Speedometer.
2. Message centre.
3. Tachometer.
4. Temperature gauge.

   Serious engine damage can occur if the vehicle is driven while the engine is overheating.

   If the pointer moves onto the red line the engine is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and allow the engine to idle until the temperature reduces. If, after several minutes, the temperature does not reduce, switch off the engine and allow to cool. If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

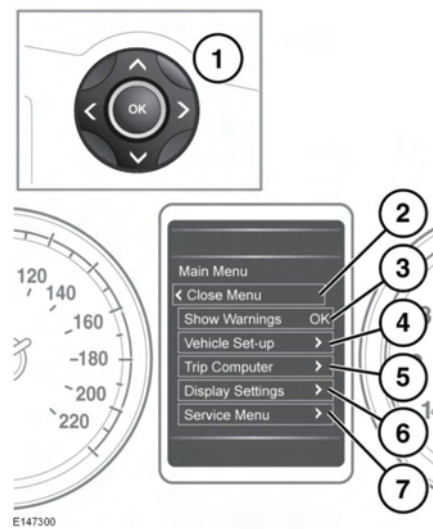
   Note: *If engine overheating occurs, there may be a noticeable reduction in engine power and the air conditioning may cease operation. This is a normal operating strategy, to reduce load on the engine and assist with cooling.*
5. Fuel gauge.

   Never allow the engine to run out of fuel. The resultant misfire can seriously damage the catalytic convertor.

   If the amber low fuel warning lamp illuminates, the vehicle should be refuelled as soon as possible. The approximate distance that can be travelled on the remaining fuel can be viewed via the trip computer range function.

   As a reminder for the location of the fuel filler, there is an arrow head next to the fuel pump symbol pointing to the relevant side of the vehicle.

INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU



A number of vehicle features and display settings may be configured via the Instrument panel menu.

To display and navigate through the Instrument panel menu, operate the menu control on the steering wheel.

1. Steering wheel menu control.
2. Close and return to previous menu.
3. Show any active warnings.
4. Access the **Vehicle Set-up** menu.

5. Access the **Trip Computer** menu.
6. Access the **Display Settings** menu.
7. Access the **Service Menu**.

WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES

Do not ignore warning messages, take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in serious damage to the vehicle.

For information regarding the individual messages, their meanings, and any action required, please refer to the relevant section within this handbook.

If more than one message is active, each is displayed in turn for 2 seconds in order of priority.

Note: *Messages are displayed in order of importance, with critical warning messages being the highest priority.*

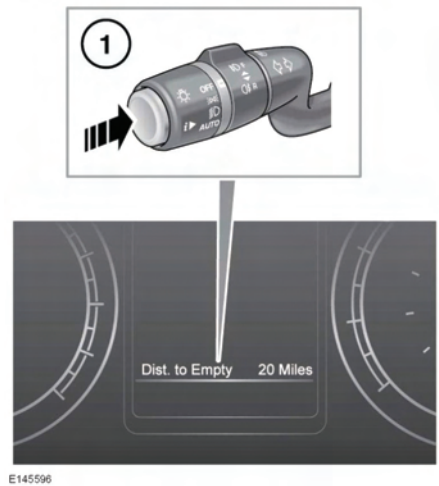
Warning messages may be accompanied by an audible warning, and the message text may have the handbook symbol next to it. Warning messages are displayed until the condition causing the fault is rectified or the message is suppressed using the **OK** button on the steering wheel. If the message is suppressed, a warning icon will remain illuminated until the cause of the message is rectified.

TRIP COMPUTER

The computer memory stores data for a journey or series of journeys until it is reset to zero. The displayed information is for guidance only, as it can be affected by traffic, road and weather conditions.

There are 3 trip memories available, A, B and Auto. The viewable trip memory can be selected through the Instrument panel menu.

USING THE TRIP COMPUTER



Press the **i** button to cycle through the trip computer information. The options available are:

- Date and Odometer.
- Trip distance.
- Trip average speed.
- Trip average fuel consumption.
- Instantaneous fuel consumption.
- Range available from remaining fuel.
- Blank display.

To reset the trip computer values to zero, press and hold the **i** button for 2 seconds.

To reset the fuel consumption value, press and hold the **i** button until the display clears.

The distance, average speed and average fuel economy values for trip A and trip B can be reset. Set the trip computer display to show the trip that you wish to reset, then press and hold the **i** button until the message **resetting trip** is displayed.

It is not possible to manually reset the Auto trip memory. This resets automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

Trips may be added together, to record a continuous journey, or removed. Press the **i** button for longer than 1 second, when Auto trip memory values for distance, average speed or average fuel economy are displayed, then **adding last journey** or **removing last journey** will appear on the screen. Press the **i** button for longer than 1 second, and the previous trip information will be added to or removed from the current trip and the new total will be displayed.

TRIP DISTANCE

Distance travelled since the last memory reset. The maximum trip reading is 9 999.9 (kilometres or miles). The computer will automatically reset to zero if this distance is exceeded.

RANGE

This shows the predicted distance (kilometres or miles) that the vehicle should travel on the remaining fuel, assuming fuel consumption stays constant.

METRIC/IMPERIAL/MIXED DISPLAY

The trip computer readings can be changed between metric, imperial and mixed units via **Trip Computer** in the Instrument panel menu. See **43, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: *Temperature display can be changed between* ***°C*** *(Celsius) and* ***°F*** *(Fahrenheit) independently of Metric or Imperial units.*

SERVICE INTERVAL INDICATOR

An upcoming service interval will be notified to the driver via the Message centre, as either a distance or time left until service is due. Once the distance or time are exceeded, the display will show a negative value (-) to indicate that a service is overdue.

One or both types of service interval (distance and time) may be displayed.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

RED warning lamps are for primary warnings. A primary warning must be investigated immediately by the driver or qualified assistance before continuing.

AMBER and YELLOW warning lamps are for secondary warnings. Some indicate that a vehicle system is in operation, others indicate that the driver must take action and then seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

GREEN and BLUE lamps within the instrument panel indicate system status.

LAMP CHECK

A warning lamp bulb check is initiated when the ignition system is switched on and lasts for 3 seconds (except for the airbag warning lamp which will remain on for 6 seconds). If any warning lamp remains on after this period, investigate the cause before driving.

Some warning lamps have associated messages displayed on the message centre.

Note: *Not all warning lamps are included in the check (e.g. high beam headlamps and direction indicators).*

CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED)



Illuminates when a critical warning message is available in the message centre.

GENERAL WARNING/INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)



Illuminates when a non-critical warning message or an information message is available in the message centre.

LOW OIL PRESSURE (RED)



Illuminates as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes when the engine is started. If the lamp remains on, flashes, or illuminates whilst driving, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and switch off the engine immediately.

Check and top-up the oil level if necessary. Start the engine: If the lamp remains illuminated, switch the engine off immediately and seek qualified assistance before continuing.

BATTERY CHARGE (RED)



Illuminates as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes when the engine is started.

If the lamp remains on or illuminates whilst driving, there is a fault with the battery charging system. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

BRAKE (RED)



Illuminates briefly as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on. If the lamp illuminates while driving, suspect low brake fluid level or a fault with the Electronic Brake Distribution (EBD) system.

Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and check and top-up the brake fluid, if necessary. If the lamp remains illuminated, seek qualified assistance before continuing.

PARKING BRAKE (RED)



Illuminates when the parking brake is correctly applied. If the lamp flashes, a fault has been detected. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

SEAT BELT (RED)



Illuminates, accompanied by a chime, when the vehicle is in motion and an occupied front seat belt is unbuckled. The lamp will extinguish when the relevant seat belt(s) is buckled.

Note: *Objects on the front passenger seat may activate the seat belt reminder. It is recommended that any objects placed on the front passenger seat are secured using the seat belt. See* ***18, USING THE SEAT BELTS****.*

ENGINE/TRANSMISSION (AMBER)



Illuminates briefly as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on. If the lamp illuminates when the engine is running, there is an emissions related fault with the engine or transmission. The vehicle can be driven but may enter limp-home mode with the possibility of reduced performance. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

If the warning lamp flashes while the engine is running, reduce speed and seek qualified assistance urgently.

BRAKE (AMBER)



Illuminates briefly as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on. If the lamp illuminates after starting the engine or whilst driving, suspect worn brake pads or a fault with the Emergency Brake Assist (EBA) system.

The vehicle can still be driven with care, but seek qualified assistance urgently.

GLOW PLUGS (AMBER)



Illuminates when the ignition is switched on to indicate that the glow plugs are active.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)



Illuminates briefly as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp flashes while driving, the DSC system is active.

A fault with the DSC system is indicated by the warning lamp illuminating and an associated warning message, or the warning lamp flashing continuously when DSC is not active. The vehicle can still be driven, but without DSC assistance. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)



Illuminates when DSC is switched off.

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS) (AMBER)



Illuminates briefly as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp remains on or illuminates whilst driving, there is a fault with the ABS system. Drive with care, avoiding heavy brake application and seek qualified assistance urgently.

AIRBAG (AMBER)



Illuminates as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes when the engine is started.

If the lamp illuminates when driving, there is a fault with the airbag system. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

REAR FOG LAMP (AMBER)



Illuminates when the rear fog lamps are switched on.

EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE (AMBER)



Illuminates when the external temperature is low enough that ice may be present on the road.

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (YELLOW)



The warning lamp illuminates, accompanied by a message in the message centre, to warn that one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, check the tyre pressures and inflate to the recommended pressure.

The lamp will flash to indicate a system fault.

HIGH BEAM (BLUE)



Illuminates when the high beam headlamps are switched on or flashed.

INTELLIGENT STOP/START (GREEN)



Illuminates when the engine is shut down by the Intelligent Stop/Start system.

Note: *Other warnings normally associated with an engine shutdown, for example the ignition warning lamp, do not illuminate during an engine shutdown by the Intelligent Stop/Start system.*

SIDE LAMPS (GREEN)



Illuminates when the side lights are switched on.

FRONT FOG LAMPS (GREEN)



Illuminates when the front fog lamps are switched on.

DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)



The appropriate warning lamp will flash when the direction indicators are operated.

HILL DESCENT CONTROL (GREEN)



Illuminates continuously when HDC is selected and HDC operating conditions are met. See .

If the lamp flashes, HDC has been selected, but the operating conditions are not being met or HDC fade-out is occurring.

CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)



Illuminates when cruise control or Adaptive cruise control is active.

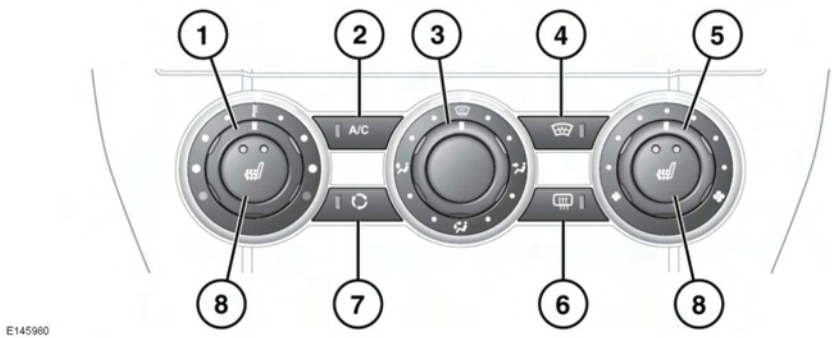
TRAILER DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)



Illuminates as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes when the engine is started.

If a trailer is attached, the warning lamp will flash in conjunction with the direction indicator warning lamp. If the lamp fails to flash, the direction indicator bulb on the trailer may be faulty.

MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL

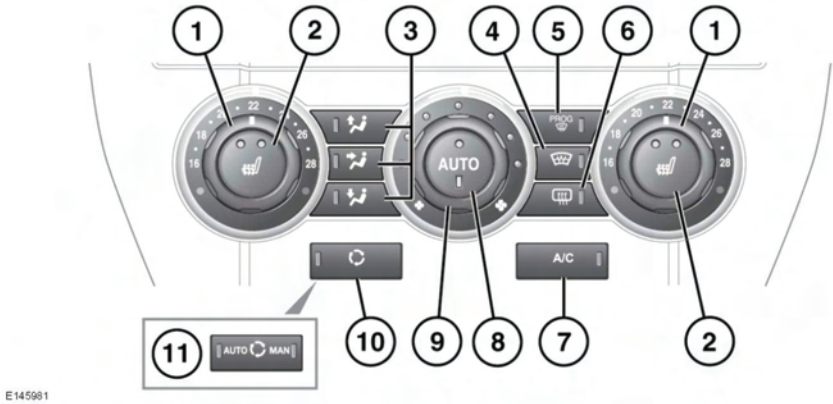


1. Temperature control, rotate to adjust.
2. Air conditioning. Press to switch on/off.
3. Air distribution, rotate to direct air flow.
4. Heated front screen, press to switch on/off.
5. Blower speed, rotate to adjust air flow speed through the vents. Current speed selection is indicated by an illuminated LED.
6. Heated rear screen, press to switch on/off.
7. Recirculation:
   - Press briefly to turn on recirculation for four minutes or to turn it off.
   - Press and hold to turn on recirculation until it is turned off.
8. Seat heaters. Press once to turn on high, twice to turn on low, and a third time to turn off.

Note: *The amber tell-tale indicators in the switches will illuminate when the function is selected.*

Note: *In low temperatures it is advisable to close the centre face level vent, and direct air flow from the outer face level vents towards the side windows. This will help to keep the windows clear of ice.*

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



1. Left and right temperature controls, rotate either control to adjust.

Note: *It is not possible to achieve a temperature differential of more than 4°C (7°F) between the left and right.*

2. Seat heaters. Press once to turn on high, twice to turn on low, and a third time to turn off.

3. Air distribution. Press the relevant button to set the air distribution to the required points. It is possible to select more than one option by pressing the required combination of buttons.

4. Heated front screen, press to switch on/off.

5. Maximum defrost program, press to switch on/off. The system will automatically adjust the blower output for maximum clearing. In addition the front and rear screen heaters will be activated.

6. Heated rear screen, press to switch on/off.

7. Air conditioning, press to switch on/off.

8. AUTO mode, press to select fully automatic operation.

9. Blower speed, rotate to adjust air flow speed through the vents. In manual mode current speed selection is indicated by an illuminated LED.

10. Recirculation:

- Press briefly to turn on recirculation for four minutes or to turn it off.
- Press and hold to turn on recirculation until it is turned off.

11. Air quality sensor: press repeatedly to toggle between:-

- Automatic - System automatically selects fresh air, or recirculation, depending on the levels of humidity and pollution present.
- Manual - System locked to recirculation.
- Off - System locked to fresh air intake.

Note: *The amber tell-tale lights in the switches will illuminate when the function is selected.*

Note: *In low temperatures it is advisable to close the centre face level vent, and direct air flow from the outer face level vents towards the side windows. This will help to keep the windows clear of ice.*

AIR QUALITY SENSOR

To change options press the switch repeatedly until the required option is selected.

1. Auto LED illuminated. In this mode the system automatically selects fresh and recirculated air dependent on pollution and cabin humidity.
2. Manual LED illuminated. Recirculation mode is selected permanently.
3. Both LEDs off. The system is in fresh air mode.

HEATED SEATS

Press the relevant button to operate the required seat heater at high level. Both LEDs will illuminate.

Press a second time to heat the seat at a lower level. One LED will extinguish.

Press a third time to switch off.

HEATED SCREENS

Press button to operate the required screen heater. The screen heater(s) will operate for a predetermined timed period before automatically switching off.

The screen heaters will be automatically switched on if defrost mode is activated or if the external air temperature is low.

Do not attach labels to the rear screen. Do not scrape or use abrasive materials to clean the inside of the screen.

AUXILIARY HEATER

Your vehicle may be fitted with an auxiliary heater which is powered by fuel drawn from the vehicle's tank. The heater only operates at low ambient temperatures, and is controlled by the Timed climate control system.

When the heater is operating exhaust fumes from the heater may be visible exiting from under the front of the vehicle. This is normal, and not a cause for concern.

Do not operate the auxiliary heater when refuelling the vehicle. Doing so may cause fuel vapours to combust causing a fire/explosion.

Do not operate the auxiliary heater whilst the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Doing so can cause a build up of highly toxic fumes which may cause unconsciousness or death.

TIMED CLIMATE CONTROL

The timed climate control system provides a comfortable temperature inside the cabin in advance of driver and passengers entering. Dependent on the external temperature, the system draws in fresh air to cool the cabin or operates the auxiliary heater to warm it.

The auxiliary heater is also operated to warm the engine and aid starting in very cold conditions.

The timed climate control system may be operated by either the touch screen or the remote handset.

The system may not operate or will switch off automatically in the following scenarios.

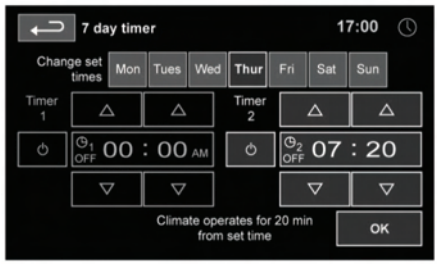
- If the fuel level is low.
- If the vehicle’s battery charge is low.
- If the coolant temperature is at or above its required temperature.

SETTING A TIME FOR TIMED CLIMATE OPERATION

The touch screen can be used to either preset activation times or to operate the system manually.

When the system is operating, the LED in the climate control **AUTO** button will flash.

Note: *The system will cease operation if the engine is started*



E140084

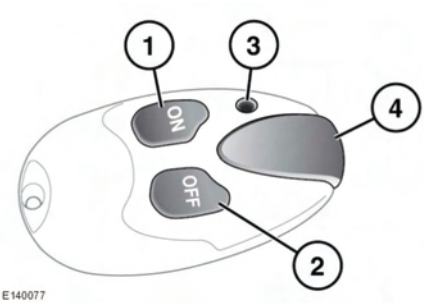
To set a timed climate programme:

1. 1. Press the **HOME MENU** hard key.
2. Touch the **Timed Climate** soft key. This soft key may be set on a personal shortcut or accessed via the **Extra Features** soft key. Select the day for which you want to set a programme or select **All Week** to select the same start time for every day.
3. Touch the Timer 1 or Timer 2 icon. The timers can be toggled between on and off using the power soft key.
4. Touch the up or down arrows to set the start time. Hours and minutes are adjusted separately.
5. Touch **OK**. The screen will display the activation time. If required, set the time for the other timer using the same process.

Note: *The time format, 12/24 hour clock, is determined by the time settings currently selected in the* **System settings** *menu. See* ***43, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU****.*

A current heating cycle will be cancelled if the engine is started. Any programmed heating cycle may be cancelled by touching the relevant power soft key on the timer set up menu or the **Power** soft key on the **Timed Climate** information home menu.

USING THE TIMED CLIMATE REMOTE



E140077

1. **ON** button.
2. **OFF** button.
3. LED (operation indicator).
4. Antenna.

   Note: *Avoid touching the antenna when operating the ON or OFF button.*

The remote control has an approximate range of 1000 m. There is no need to point the antenna at the vehicle.

Press and hold the **ON** button for approximately two seconds. The LED will illuminate to confirm that an automatic heating program has been initiated. The LED flashes once every 2 seconds to indicate that the heater is active.

The heating programme will continue for 20-30 minutes, when it will switch off automatically to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. It also turns off automatically if the engine is started.

The LED indicator signals various states and conditions for the heater as follows:

- Illuminates green for 2 seconds when the **ON** button is pressed, to indicate that heater operation has been requested.
- Illuminates red for 2 seconds when the **OFF** button is pressed, to indicate that the heater has stopped.
- Flashes green or red for 2 seconds when the **ON** or **OFF** buttons are pressed, to indicate that the signal was not received.
- Illuminates orange for 2 seconds before showing green or red, to indicate that the remote battery is low.
- Flashes orange for 5 seconds to indicate that the signal was not received and the remote battery should be replaced.

ADDITIONAL REMOTES

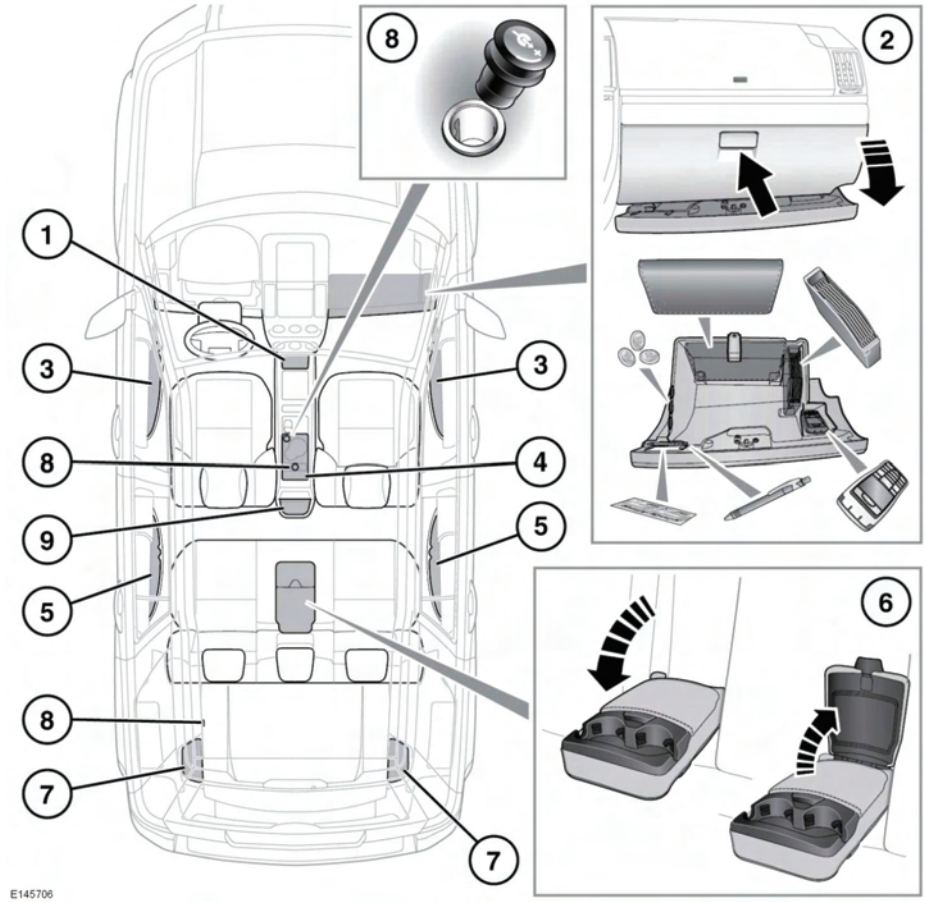
Additional remote controls can be programmed to operate the heater. A maximum of 3 remotes can be programmed to each vehicle. Contact a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer to purchase additional remotes and have them programmed to the vehicle.

REPLACING THE REMOTE BATTERIES



With the back of the remote control facing upwards, use a coin or similar implement to rotate the battery cover. Lift the cover off to reveal the battery compartment. Remove the old battery and, ensuring that the correct polarity is maintained, insert a replacement 3.3 volt, CR1/3N battery. Replace the cover and rotate it to lock it closed.

STORAGE COMPARTMENTS



Ensure that any items stored in the vehicle are secure and cannot move. If the vehicle is involved in an accident, or subject to sudden braking or direction change, loose items can cause serious injury.

Do not drink, or use the cup holders when driving.

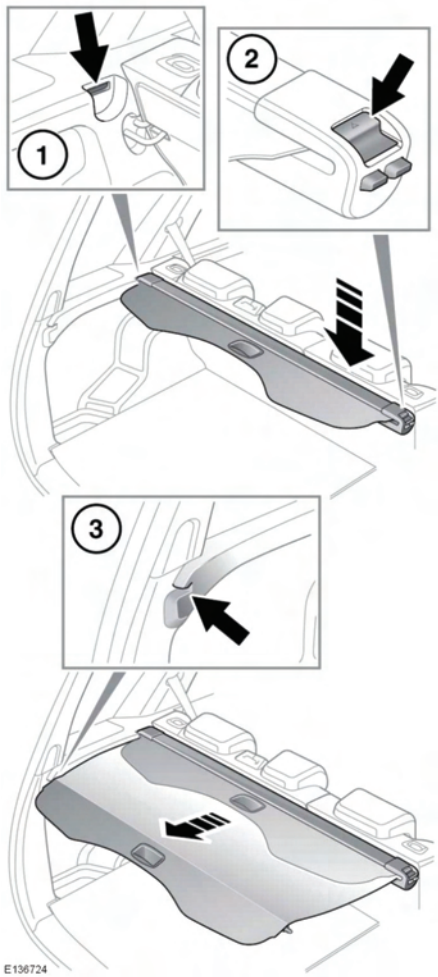
1. Storage tray.
2. Glovebox.
3. Front door bottle holders.
4. Storage tray.
5. Rear door bottle holders.
6. Rear compartment and cup holders.
7. Additional storage.
8. Power sockets.
9. Centre console storage.

- Only use Land Rover approved accessories. Using any other equipment may damage the vehicle's electrical system. If you are in any doubt contact a Land Rover Dealer/ Authorised Repairer.
- The engine should be running when using accessories for long periods. Failure to do so can discharge the battery.

Note: *Power sockets can be used to power approved accessories that use a maximum of 180 Watts.*

LOADSPACE COVER

Never place objects on top of the luggage cover. During an accident or sudden manoeuvre, loose objects can cause serious injury or death.

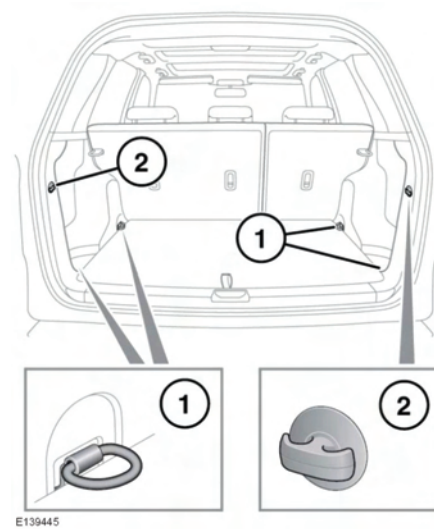


1. Insert the location peg on the left-hand end of the luggage cover into the slot.
2. Lower the right-hand end into position by pulling back the release button.

   Ensure that the release button returns to the locked position when the cover is in position.
3. Pull the luggage cover blind towards the rear of the vehicle. Engage the end pegs into the recesses provided in the load space side trims.

Do not store the loadspace cover loose in the vehicle.

LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS



All items carried in the luggage area should be properly secured.

1. Load securing rings.
   - To assist in safely securing large items of luggage, four fixing points are located in the rear loadspace floor.

2. Bag hooks.
    - The bag hooks should only be used to secure light items such as shopping bags.

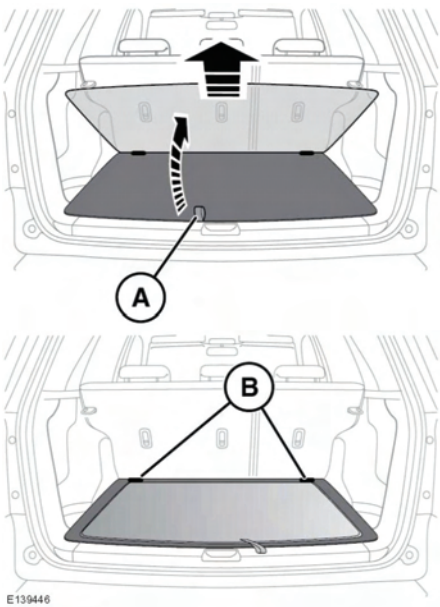
Note: *A range of approved luggage retention accessories are available from your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.*

LOADSPACE FLOOR

When removing or replacing the loadspace floor, take care to avoid getting your hands or fingers trapped between the floor panel and the vehicle.

When removing or replacing the loadspace floor ensure that children and pets are kept at a safe distance to avoid injury.

The loadspace floor is reversible to allow a choice of carpeted or hard surfaces to be made.



To reverse the loadspace floor:-

1. Using the finger loop (**A**), raise the floor panel.
2. Pull the panel towards the rear of the vehicle to release it from the retaining channels (**B**).
3. Reverse the floor, relocate in the retaining channels (B) and lower in to posiotion.

ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

- When calculating the laden weight of the trailer, remember to include the weight of the trailer, plus the weight of the load.
- If the load can be divided between the vehicle and trailer, loading more weight into the vehicle will generally improve stability. Do not exceed the vehicle's weight limits.
- Ensure trailer tyre pressures are set to trailer manufacturer's recommendations.
- If the vehicle is loaded to maximum Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) the nose weight is limited to 150 kg (330 lbs). See **59, TOWING WEIGHTS**.
- If it is necessary to increase the nose weight up to a maximum of 250 kg (550 lbs), the vehicle load should be reduced accordingly. This ensures that the GVW and maximum rear axle load are not exceeded.
- Ensure that a suitable breakaway cable or secondary coupling is used. Refer to the trailer manufacturer's instructions for guidance.
- Ensure that the tow ball is secure.
- Check the operation of all trailer lights.
- It is essential that the trailer is loaded so that it remains parallel to the ground. This is particularly important when towing twin axled trailers.



Do not loop the breakaway cable over the tow ball as it may slide off.



Do not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), maximum rear axle weight, maximum trailer weight, or nose weight. Exceeding any of these limits could cause instability and loss of control.

Australia only:

- **Tyre pressures** - Increase rear pressures of towing vehicle to those for maximum Gross Vehicle Weight conditions.
- **Nose weight** - Must be a minimum of 7% of gross caravan/trailer weight, up to a maximum of 350 kg (722 lb).

TOWING WEIGHTS

Maximum permissible towing weights	On-road	Off-road
Unbraked trailers	750 kg (1650 lbs)	750 kg (1650 lbs)
Trailers with overrun brakes	2000 kg (4400 lbs)*	750 kg (1650 lbs)
Nose weight	150 kg (330 lbs)	-
Nose weight - Australia only	350 kg (770 lb)	-

* For diesel vehicles in Algeria, Egypt, India, Libya, Morocco, Pakistan and Tunisia, the maximum permissible towing weight for a trailer with overrun brakes is 1500 kg (3307 lbs).

See **59, TOWING WEIGHTS**, for details of the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), Gross train weight, axle weights and maximum payload.

Note: *When towing, the maximum permissible Gross Vehicle Weight can be increased by a maximum of 100 kg (220 lbs) provided that the road speed is limited to 100 km/h (60 mph).*

Note: *When calculating rear axle loading, remember that the trailer nose weight, the load in the vehicle's luggage area, weight on the roof rack, and the weight of rear seat passengers must all be added together.*

TRAILER ELECTRICAL CONNECTION

Only connect approved electrical circuits, which are in good condition, to the trailer socket.

When a trailer electrical connection is made and the vehicle's direction indicators are used, the trailer warning indicator will flash in time with the direction indicators.

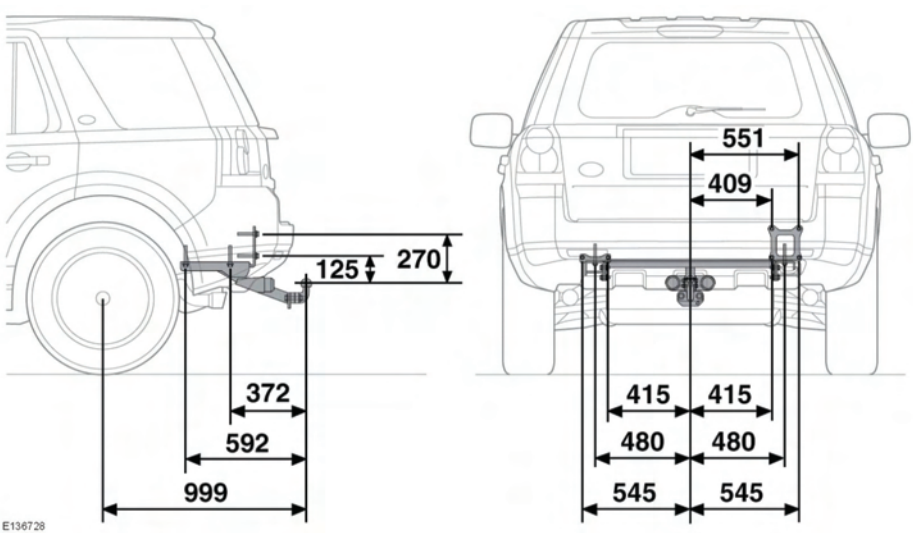
TOWING A TRAILER

Never exceed the maximum weights for either the vehicle, or the trailer. Doing so can cause accelerated wear and damage to the vehicle. It can also adversely affect vehicle stability and braking which in turn can lead to loss of control and increased braking distance, resulting in a rollover or crash.

To preserve handling and stability, only fit Land Rover approved towing accessories.

Never use towing eyes or lashing points to tow a trailer. They have not been designed for this purpose and doing so may cause them to fail, resulting in injury or death.

TOW BAR DIMENSIONS AND MOUNTING POINTS



All measurements in millimetres.

STARTING THE ENGINE

Never start the engine, or leave it running, when the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Exhaust gasses are poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death if inhaled.

If the engine fails to start, do not continue cranking as this will discharge the battery. It may also damage the catalytic convertor due to unburnt fuel passing through the exhaust.

Note: *The Smart Key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including laptop bag), games console etc. Keep the Smart Key clear of such devices when attempting Keyless entry or Keyless starting.*

To start the engine.

1. Ensure that a valid Smart Key is inside the vehicle.
2. Ensure that Park (**P**) or Neutral (**N**) is selected.
3. Firmly depress the brake pedal.
4. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.

   Note: *For diesel vehicles the delay period before cranking begins will be longer in low ambient temperatures due to extended glow plug operation. During this extended delay the brake pedal must remain depressed.*

Once the engine has started, the brake pedal can be released if it safe to do so.

SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

Whilst the vehicle is stationary:

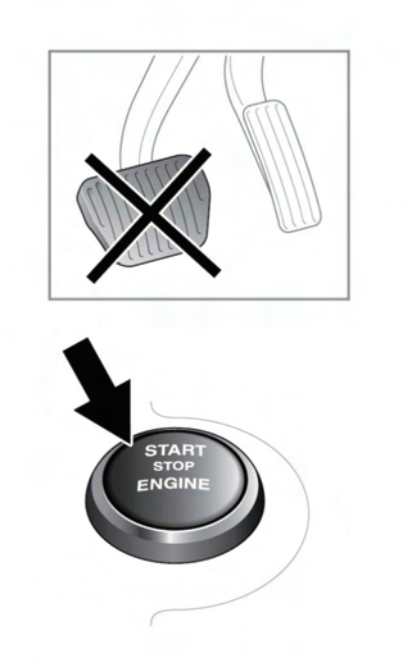
1. Ensure that the vehicle is parked with Park (**P**) selected and the parking brake applied.
2. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.

Whilst the vehicle is moving:

It is not advisable to switch off the engine whilst the vehicle is moving. However, if a situation arises where engine switch off is urgent, the following procedure applies:

1. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button for 2 seconds, or
2. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button twice within 2 seconds.

SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION



E145741

To switch on the ignition without starting the engine.

1. Ensure the brake pedal is not depressed and that a valid Smart Key is inside the vehicle.
2. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button until the warning lamps illuminate.
3. Release the engine **START/STOP** button.

If the brake pedal is applied when the engine **START/STOP** button is pressed, the engine will start.

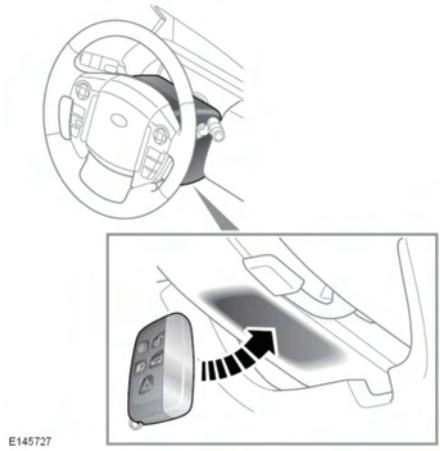
ROLLING RE-START

A rolling restart can be initiated by selecting Neutral (**N**) and pressing the engine **START/STOP** button.

KEYLESS START BACKUP

If the vehicle has been unlocked using the emergency key blade or the Smart Key is not detected by the vehicle, it will be necessary to use the keyless start backup to disarm the alarm and start the engine.

The keyless start backup can only be used when the message **Smart Key Not Found - Refer to Handbook** is displayed in the Driver information centre.



1. Position the Smart Key against the underside of the steering column cover with the buttons facing downwards.
2. Firmly depress the brake pedal.
3. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.

Once the engine has started, the brake pedal can be released if it is safe to do so.

If the Smart Key is not recognised, or the engine still fails to start, consult a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

INTELLIGENT STOP/START

The Stop/Start system is designed to improve fuel efficiency and is automatically activated when the ignition is turned on. If the vehicle is stopped (e.g. at traffic lights or in traffic) the engine will turn off (unless it is required to support other vehicle systems). When the brake is released and a drive gear is selected, the engine will restart automatically.



The warning lamp in the instrument panel illuminates when the engine has been switched off by the Stop/Start system.

To activate an automatic engine stop:

- Stop the vehicle from a speed greater than 4 km/h (2.5 mph) and apply sufficient brake pressure to ensure the vehicle is stationary.
- Alternatively, whilst stationary, select Neutral (**N**).

To activate an automatic engine restart release the brake pedal with Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**) selected.

The engine will also restart if one of the following occurs:

- Stop/Start is deactivated.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed.
- Reverse (**R**) is selected.
- Climate control system demand increases.
- The vehicle's speed exceeds approximately 1 km/h (0.5 mph).
- Battery charge becomes low.
- Brake vacuum has been reduced (e.g. using the brake pedal repeatedly with the engine off).

The following conditions will prevent an automatic engine stop:

- The external temperature is less than approximately 0 °C (32 °F).
- The external temperature is more than approximately 40 °C (104 °F).
- The engine has not reached operating temperature.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The climate control system demand requires the engine to be running (for example, in Defrost mode).
- The battery charge is low.
- The bonnet is opened.
- Stop/Start is deactivated.

DEACTIVATING INTELLIGENT STOP/START

To switch the system off, press the **ECO** switch.

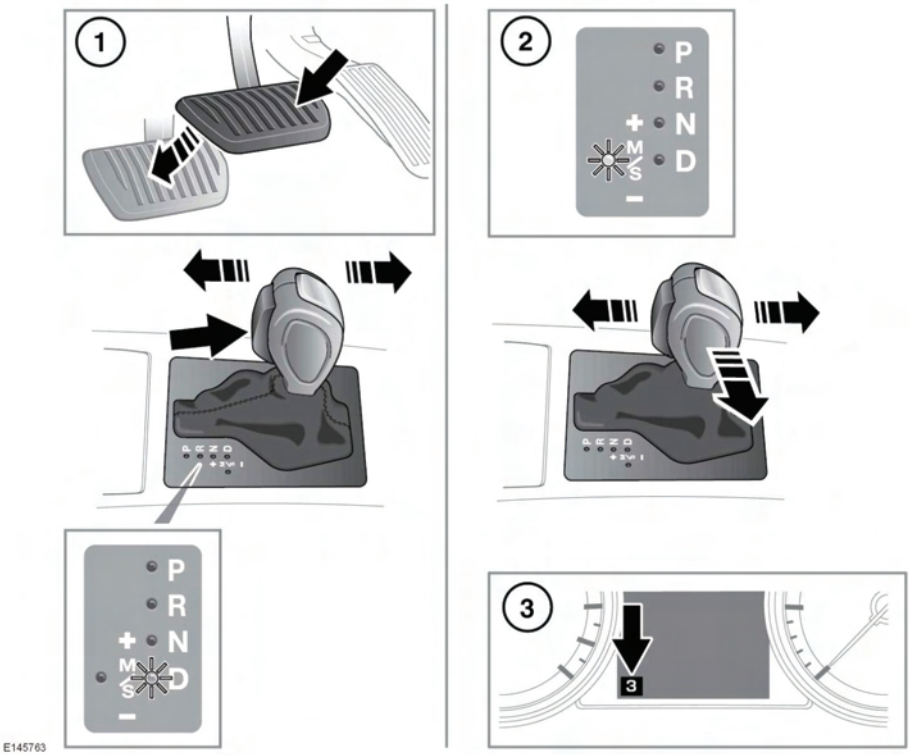
Note: *The engine will restart automatically if the switch is pressed whilst an automatic engine stop is in progress.*



To confirm that the system is off, the Intelligent stop/start system off warning symbol illuminates and the message **ECO Stop/Start Off** is momentarily displayed.

The Intelligent stop/start system off warning symbol also illuminates if there is a system fault. If the **ECO** switch is pressed while there is a fault, the message **ECO Stop/Start Unavailable** is displayed.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



1. To select Drive (**D**) when the vehicle is stationary, apply the foot brake and press the gear selector release button.

   Note: *If pressure is applied to the selector lever before the foot brake is applied, any gear selected may not be available, irrespective of the lever position. In this situation, remove pressure from the selector lever, ensure that the foot brake is applied and select the required gear.*

2. To select sport mode, move the gear selector to the left while in **D**. Confirmation will be displayed in the message centre.

   To use CommandShift™, first select sport mode, then move the selector lever forward to move up a gear, and back to move down gear.

   To return to automatic mode move the selector lever back to the **D** position. The **D** on the selector display will illuminate to confirm that automatic mode has been selected.

3. The selected gear will be displayed in the message centre.

Park (P) should be engaged and the parking brake applied when the vehicle is stationary.

Always select P and switch off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.

Never select Park (**P**) whilst the vehicle is in motion.

Never select Reverse (**R**) whilst the vehicle is in forward motion.

Never select a forward gear whilst the vehicle is in rearward motion.

Do not rev the engine or allow it to run above normal idle speed, while selecting **D** or **R**, or whilst the vehicle is stationary with any gear selected.

Do not allow the vehicle to remain stationary for any length of time, with a gear selected and the engine running. Always select **P** or **N** if the engine is to idle for a prolonged period.

MANUAL GEAR SELECTION

If CommandShift™ is selected, 1st gear must be used for moving off from stationary.

To return to Sport mode after CommandShift™ has been selected, move the gear selector lever into the **D** position, then back to Sport mode.

TRANSMISSION COMMANDSHIFT SELECTED will appear in the message centre when the transmission is in CommandShift mode.

Note: *In order to protect the engine, the transmission will automatically change up to prevent over-revving or down if the engine is labouring.*

HILL DESCENT

With Hill Descent Control (HDC) selected in either automatic, Sport or CommandShift modes, a low gear will be selected and maintained to provide maximum engine braking. Should the gear lever be moved to **D** from the sport/CommandShift position, the selected gear will be retained until the descent is completed. See **79, HDC OPERATION**.

TRANSMISSION FAULT

In the event that the transmission develops a fault, a warning message may be displayed in the message centre and only limited gears may become available. You should seek qualified assistance immediately.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Selection of reverse gear is prevented when the vehicle is travelling in excess of 24 km/h (15 mph). Never attempt to engage reverse gear whilst the vehicle is in forward motion. This may result in serious transmission damage and costly repairs.

GEAR SHIFT INDICATOR



The gear shift indicator illuminates briefly at the recommended gear change point (upshift).

The shift indicator will not illuminate whilst Cruise control is active and not being overridden by pressing the throttle pedal.

Note: *This warning indicator is only a guide. It remains the responsibility of the driver to operate the vehicle in an appropriate manner for the prevailing conditions.*

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is unable to compensate for driver misjudgement. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention, in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants and the other road users.

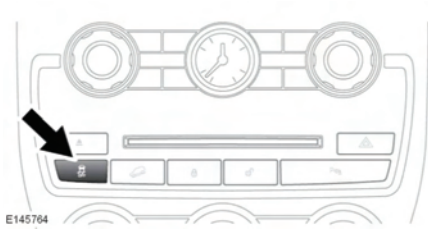
DSC optimises vehicle stability, even in critical driving situations. The system controls dynamic stability when accelerating and when starting from a standstill. Additionally, it identifies unstable driving behaviour, such as understeer and oversteer and helps to keep the vehicle under control by manipulating the engine output and applying the brakes at individual wheels. Some noise may be generated when the brakes are applied.

SWITCHING DSC OFF

Safety may be reduced by inappropriately disabling DSC. In the majority of driving situations, and particularly on-road, it is recommended that you do not disable DSC.

In some driving conditions it may be appropriate to disable DSC to improve traction. These conditions include:

- Rocking the vehicle out of a hollow or deep rut.
- Pulling away in deep snow, or a loose surface.
- Driving through deep sand or mud.



To disable DSC, press and briefly hold the DSC OFF switch on the fascia (the DSC off warning lamp will illuminate continuously). Deactivating DSC also reduces the level of Traction control intervention and may lead to an increase in wheel spin.

SWITCHING DSC ON

DSC is re-enabled by one of the following:

- Press and briefly hold the DSC OFF switch.
- Start the engine.
- Select a new Terrain response special program.

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal whilst the vehicle is in motion.

Never allow the vehicle to coast (freewheel) with the engine turned off. The engine must be running to provide full braking assistance. The brakes will still function with the engine off, but far more pressure will be required to operate them.

If the red brake warning indicator illuminates, safely bring the vehicle to a stop, as quickly as possible and seek qualified assistance.

Never place non-approved floor matting or any other obstructions under the brake pedal. This restricts pedal travel and braking efficiency.

Driving through heavy rain or water can have an adverse effect on braking efficiency. Under such circumstances, it is recommended that you lightly apply the brakes intermittently, to dry the brakes.

STEEP SLOPES

If the vehicle is stationary on a steep, slippery slope, it may begin to slide even with the brakes applied. This is because without wheel rotation, the ABS cannot determine vehicle movement.

To counteract this, briefly release the brakes to allow some wheel rotation. Then re-apply the brakes to allow ABS to gain control.

EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)

If the driver rapidly applies the brakes, EBA automatically boosts the braking force to its maximum, in order to bring the vehicle to a halt as quickly as possible. If the driver applies the brakes slowly but conditions mean that ABS operates on the front wheels, EBA will increase the braking force in order to apply ABS control to the rear wheels.

EBA stops operating as soon as the brake pedal is released.



The amber brake warning lamp illuminates briefly when the ignition is turned on.

A fault with the EBA system is indicated by the amber brake warning lamp illuminating and an associated warning message. Gently and safely stop the vehicle and seek qualified assistance.

ELECTRONIC BRAKE FORCE DISTRIBUTION (EBD)

EBD controls the balance of braking forces supplied to the front and rear wheels, in order to maintain maximum braking efficiency.

If the vehicle has a light load (only the driver in the vehicle for example), EBD will reduce the braking force applied to the rear wheels. If the vehicle is heavily laden, EBD will allow greater braking force to the rear wheels.



The red brake warning lamp illuminates briefly when the ignition is turned on.

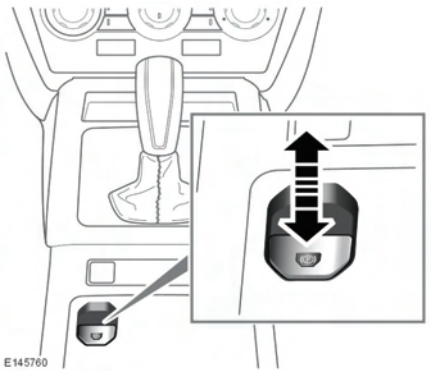
A fault with the EBD system is indicated by the red brake warning indicator illuminating and an associated warning message. Gently and safely stop the vehicle and seek qualified assistance.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB)

The parking brakes operate on the rear wheels. Therefore, secure parking of the vehicle is dependent on being on a hard and stable surface.

Do not rely on the parking brake to operate effectively, if the rear wheels have been immersed in mud or water.

Note: *If the vehicle is used in severe off-road conditions (e.g. wading, deep mud, etc.), additional maintenance and adjustment of the parking brake will be required. Consult your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.*



With the ignition turned on, press the brake pedal and press down on the EPB switch. This will release the electronic parking brake.

With the vehicle stationary, pull up the EPB switch and release it to apply the parking brake. The parking brake warning lamp (see **47, PARKING BRAKE (RED)**) illuminates to indicate that the parking brake is applied.

If the EPB is operated when the vehicle speed is less than 3 km/h (2 mph) the vehicle will be brought to an abrupt stop. The stop lamps will not be illuminated.

With manual transmission the EPB is applied automatically if the ignition is switched off and the vehicle speed is below 3 km/h (2 mph). To prevent automatic operation, when the vehicle is stationary, press and hold the EPB switch in the release position. Within 5 seconds, switch off the ignition and continue to hold the EPB switch for a further 2 seconds.

With automatic transmission manual application of the EPB is required.

Driving the vehicle with the parking brake applied, or repeated use of the parking brake to slow the vehicle, may cause serious damage to the brake system.

In an emergency, with the vehicle travelling more than 3 km/h (2 mph), pulling on the EPB switch and holding gives a gradual reduction in the speed. The brake warning lamp will illuminate accompanied by a warning tone and a warning message in the message centre. The stop lamps will illuminate.

If the vehicle is stationary with the EPB applied and the transmission in **D** or **R**, pressing the accelerator will release the EPB and allow the vehicle to move off.

Note: *Automatic release of the EPB is only possible when the driver's door is closed or the driver's seat belt is buckled.*

If the system detects a fault with the EPB, the amber brake warning lamp will illuminate accompanied by a message on the message centre.

If the system detects a fault while EPB is operating, the red parking brake warning lamp will flash, accompanied by a message in the message centre.

Note: *The red parking brake warning lamp will continue to be illuminated for at least ten seconds after the ignition has been turned off.*

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

TPMS provides a low pressure warning and does not re-inflate your tyres. Tyre pressures should be checked regularly using an accurate pressure gauge when cold.

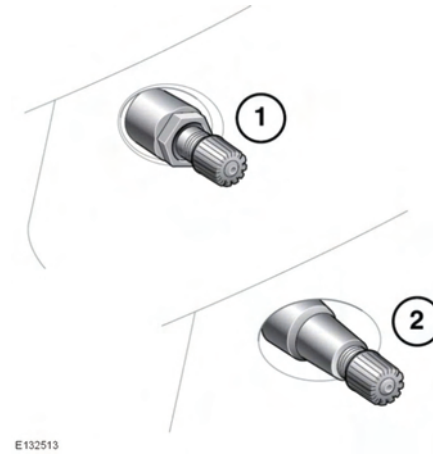
TPMS can NOT register damage to a tyre. Regularly check the condition of your tyres, especially if the vehicle is driven off-road

When inflating tyres, care should be taken to avoid bending or damaging the TPMS valves. Always ensure correct alignment of the inflation head to the valve stem.

Note: *Non-approved accessories may interfere with the system. If this occurs,* **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING FAULT** *is displayed in the message centre.*

Note: *Different types of tyre may affect TPMS performance. Always replace tyres in accordance with recommendations.*

TPMS constantly monitors the tyre pressure in each wheel, including the full size spare. Temporary use spare tyres (when fitted) are not monitored. See **70, TEMPORARY USE SPARE WHEEL AND TYRE CHANGE**.



Wheels fitted with TPMS can be visually identified by the external metal lock nut and valve (**1**). All Land Rover non-TPMS wheels have a rubber valve fitted (**2**).

Tyre pressures should be checked regularly when cold, and adjusted as necessary. The presence of TPMS does not remove the need to do this to ensure vehicle safety.

The tyre pressure warning lamp (see **48, TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (YELLOW)**) illuminates when one or more of the tyres are significantly under-inflated. Stop and check the tyres as soon as possible and inflate them to the recommended pressure for the vehicle loading condition.

TPMS also monitors the full size spare tyre pressure. If the pressure for the spare tyre is incorrect, the message **CHECK SPARE TYRE PRESSURE** is displayed, accompanied by illumination of the warning lamp.

FULL SIZE SPARE WHEEL AND TYRE CHANGE

The system will automatically recognise any changes in wheel positions. The vehicle must be stationary for 15 minutes during the wheel and tyre change, to ensure that the system can detect the change. After driving above 25 km/h (18 mph) any deflation warning should clear within approximately 5 minutes.

TEMPORARY USE SPARE WHEEL AND TYRE CHANGE

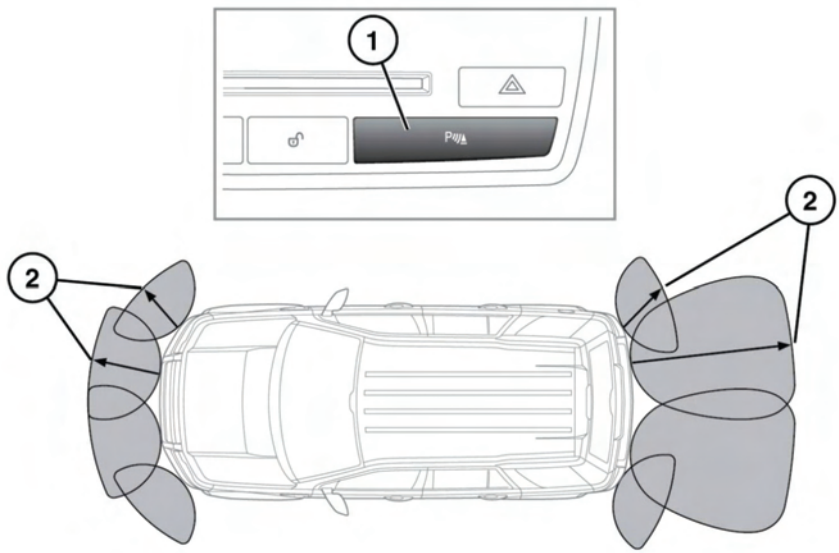
If the temporary use spare wheel is fitted, the system will automatically recognise the change in wheel positions. After approximately 10 minutes of driving above 25 km/h (18 mph), the message **FRONT[REAR] RIGHT[LEFT] TYRE PRESSURE NOT MONITORED** will be displayed, accompanied by illumination of the warning lamp.

The warning lamp will first flash and then illuminate continuously. Extended use of the temporary use spare wheel will trigger the message **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FAULT**.

This TPMS display sequence will be activated at every ignition cycle until the temporary spare wheel is replaced by a full-size road wheel with a TPMS sensor fitted.

Note: *If in use, always replace the temporary spare wheel before having a TPMS fault investigated.*

USING THE PARKING AID



E145758

Parking aids may not detect moving objects such as children and animals, until they are dangerously close. Always use extreme caution when manoeuvring.

PDC sensors may not detect some obstructions (e.g. narrow posts or small objects close to the ground).

Note: *The rear sensors are automatically disabled when a trailer is connected.*

1. When Reverse (**R**) is selected, the front and rear parking sensors are activated automatically, and the switch indicator will illuminate.

   To manually activate the front sensors press the PDC button and the switch indicator will illuminate.

   To turn off the system when active, press the button. The switch indicator will extinguish.
2. The range of the parking aid sensors varies between the front, rear and corners of the vehicle.

The front sensors will remain active as long as the vehicle's forward speed does not exceed 16 km/h (10 mph).

Selecting **N** from **R** will keep front and rear sensors active.

When objects are detected, the parking aid emits a warning tone which increases in frequency as the vehicle gets closer to the object and then becomes constant when the obstacle is within 300 mm (12 inches).

Note: *The front parking aid provides an audible proximity warning when driving forwards and when reversing.*

CLEANING THE SENSORS

When washing the vehicle do not aim high pressure water jets directly at the sensors. Do not use abrasive materials or hard/sharp objects to clean the sensors. Only use approved vehicle shampoo.

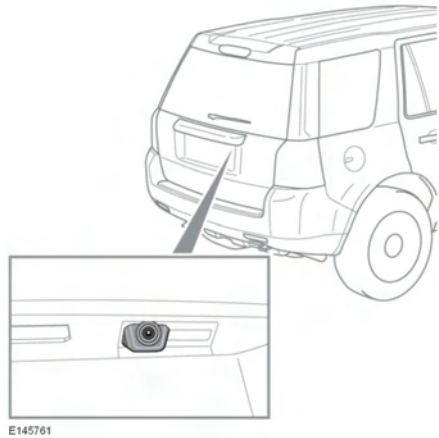
The sensors should be kept clean to maintain accuracy and performance.

PARKING AID SYSTEM FAULT

If a system fault is detected, a long high-pitched tone will sound, and the switch indicator will flash. Contact your Dealer/ Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

REAR CAMERA

It remains the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the vehicle's distance from them when reversing.


E145761

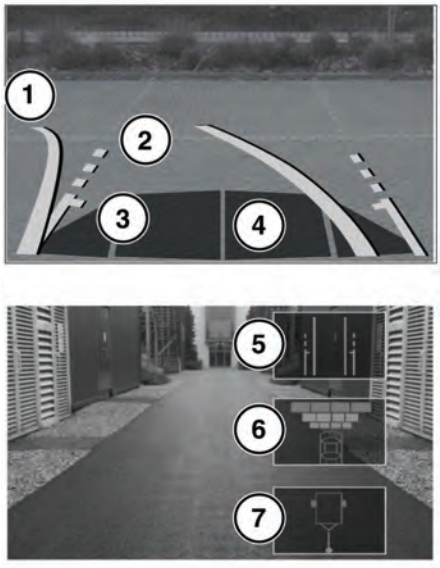
When reverse gear is selected, the screen automatically displays a wide angle, colour image from the rear of your vehicle.

The rear view camera system provides a rear view image to assist in reversing the vehicle. Overlaid on the image are reversing guidelines.

Rear view camera display on the touch screen will discontinue when either of the following apply:

- Drive is selected for longer than 5 seconds.
- Drive is selected and/or vehicle speed is greater than 18 km/h (11 mph).

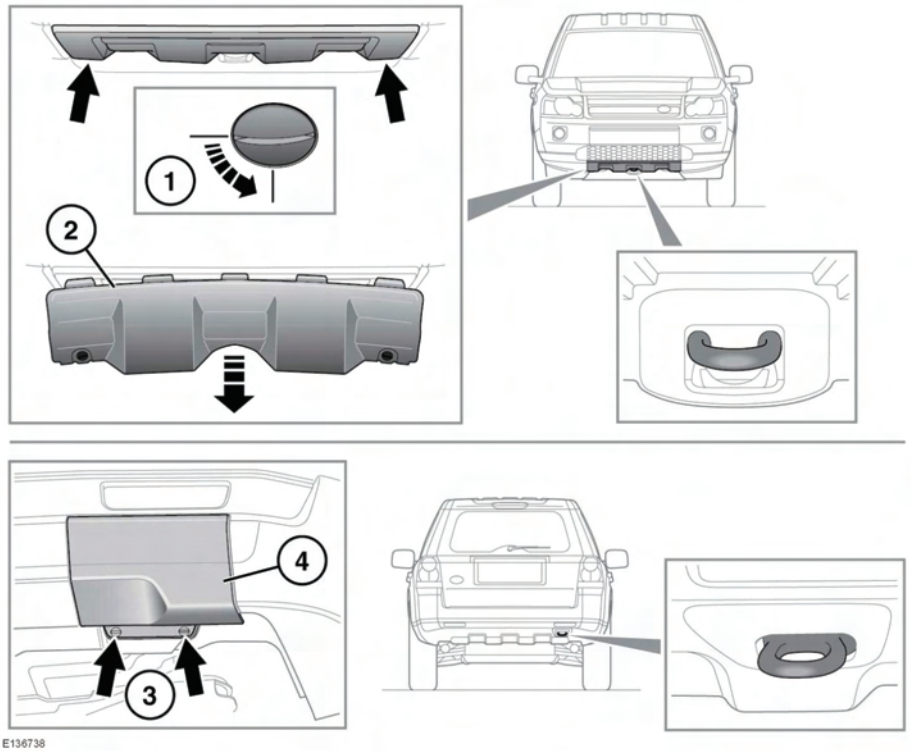
To adjust the camera settings while in reverse, touch anywhere on the touch screen to display the user options.



E145190

1. Solid line: The projected path based on current steering wheel position.
2. Dotted line: The safe working width of the vehicle (including exterior mirrors).
3. Tailgate access guideline: Do not reverse beyond this point if tailgate access is required.
4. Parking sensor activation: A coloured area appears, to indicate which rear sensor(s) has been activated.
5. User option. Touch to enable/disable (**1**), (**2**) and (**3**).
6. User option. Touch to enable/disable (**4**) Parking sensor.
7. User option. Touch to enable/disable Hitch Assist guidance lines.

TOWING EYES



The towing eyes at the front and rear of the vehicle are designed for on-road recovery only. If they are used for any other purpose, it may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.

Remove the front and rear towing eye covers before driving off-road, to prevent damage or loss.

Remove the body styling kit for access to rear towing eye.

The front towing point is located behind a removable cover in the lower front bumper.

1. Using a suitable tool rotate each of the fasteners 90 degrees anticlockwise.
2. To remove the cover, lower the top edge and then pull the cover forward.

   To refit, offer up the cover and ensure the two lugs at the bottom edge engage with the holes in the body panel.
3. Using a suitable tool rotate each of the fasteners 90 degrees anticlockwise.
4. Remove the cover.

OFF-ROAD RECOVERY

If the towing eyes are to be used for off-road recovery, it is essential that off-road driver training covering recovery techniques is undertaken.

Further information on off-road driver training can be found at http://www.landroverexperience.com

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

Do not undock the remote control as this will lock the steering column.

If the vehicle battery is to be disconnected, the steering column must be unlocked first. It is not possible to unlock the steering column with the battery disconnected.

If the engine cannot be used during towing, there will be no power assistance to the braking or steering systems. This will result in much greater effort to steer and stop the vehicle and a greatly increased stopping distance.

Only tow the vehicle in a forward direction with all four wheels on the ground. Towing in a reverse direction with two wheels on the ground will cause serious damage to the transmission.

The vehicle should only be towed for a maximum of 50 km (30 miles) at a maximum speed of 50 km/h (30 mph). Towing for a greater distance or at a higher speed, may result in serious damage to the transmission.

Do not tow the vehicle if the gearbox cannot be set in neutral.

The following procedure must be carried out carefully to prevent damage to the vehicle:

1. Secure the towing attachment from the recovery vehicle to the front towing point.
2. With the parking brake applied, switch on the ignition.
3. Apply the foot brake and place the gear lever into neutral.
4. Switch off the ignition and leave the remote control docked.
5. The ignition may be switched on to allow operation of indicators, brake lamps etc.
6. Release the parking brake before towing the vehicle.

Leaving the ignition switched on for extended periods will drain the vehicle battery.

AFTER TOWING ON FOUR WHEELS

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Switch on the ignition and apply the foot brake.
3. Place the auto selector lever in the park position.
4. Switch off the ignition and undock the remote control.
5. Remove the towing attachment and refit the cover to the front towing point.

Use extreme caution when detaching towing equipment. Vehicle movement is possible which can result in serious injury.

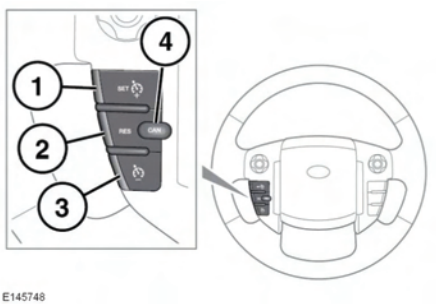
USING CRUISE CONTROL

In certain conditions, such as a steep gradient, the vehicle speed may exceed the set cruising speed. This is because engine braking is unable to maintain or reduce the vehicle speed. Driver intervention may be required.

Note: *Cruise control is not available when using Hill Descent Control (HDC) or when a Terrain Response special program has been selected, except for the Grass-Gravel-Snow (GGS) program.*

Note: *Do not use cruise control when driving off-road.*

Note: *Do not use cruise control with* ***SPORT*** *mode selected.*



1. **SET+**: Press to set the speed or to increase the set speed. The cruise control warning lamp will illuminate to confirm cruise control is operational. See **49, CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)**.

   The cruising speed can also be increased using the accelerator. When the desired speed is reached, press the button to set and maintain the new speed and then release the accelerator.

   Note: *Cruise control can only be engaged at speeds in excess of 30 km/h (18 mph).*

   Note: *When setting the cruise control to the speed limit, it is important to remember that it is possible for the vehicle speed to increase when travelling downhill. This may result in the vehicle speed exceeding the speed limit.*

2. **RES**: Press to resume the set speed.

   RES should be used only if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.

3. Press to decrease the set speed.

4. **CAN**: Press to cancel but retain the set speed in memory.

   Cruise control will also be cancelled if the brake pedal is pressed, the gear selector is moved to Neutral (**N**), or if HDC or DSC are activated.

The system is operated by controls mounted on the steering wheel. The driver can also intervene at any time by use of the brake or accelerator pedals.

Note: *If the accelerator pedal is pressed for more than 5 minutes, cruise control will be cancelled.*

BEFORE DRIVING OFF-ROAD

Before venturing off-road, it is absolutely essential that inexperienced drivers become fully familiar with the vehicle's controls. In particular, CommandShift™, Hill Descent Control (HDC) and the Terrain response system.

TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION



Terrain Response selection is via centre console switches. Use the switches to move through the different program selections. The currently selected program icon will be displayed in the message centre.

Messages relating to the Terrain Response system are displayed in the message centre. See **44, WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES**. Most of the messages that appear will be for information only and require no driver intervention.

Note: *Changing between special programs will alter various vehicle settings, e.g. engine revs while at the current accelerator pedal position may alter or the steering feel might change. These changes are not dramatic but will be noticeable.*

It is advisable to experiment with the available settings in an environment that will not affect other road users.

GENERAL PROGRAM (SPECIAL PROGRAMS OFF)



This program is compatible with all on and off-road conditions. If not already active, it should be selected before driving on surfaces which are similar to a hard road surface. Dry cobbles, tarmac, dry wooden planks, etc., all fall into this category.

This program should be selected once the need for a special program has passed. Once the special program has been deselected, all of the vehicle systems will return to their normal settings except HDC. HDC will remain active if it was selected manually.

GRASS/GRAVEL/SNOW



This program should be used where a firm surface is covered with loose or slippery material.

Note: *For deep gravel it is recommended that the Sand program is selected.*

Note: *If the vehicle is unable to gain traction in deep snow, switching DSC off may help. DSC should be switched on again, as soon as the difficulty is overcome.*

MUD-RUTS



This program should be used for crossing terrain that is muddy, rutted, soft or uneven. HDC is automatically selected with this program.

SAND



This program should be used for terrain which is predominantly soft dry sand or deep gravel.

Note: *If the vehicle is unable to gain traction in extremely soft, dry sand, switching DSC off may help. DSC should be switched on again as soon as the difficulty is overcome.*

If the sand to be crossed is damp/wet, and sufficiently deep to cause the wheels to sink into the surface, the Mud-Ruts program should be used.

DRIVER OVERRIDE OPTIONS

Although Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is automatically engaged when a special program is selected, it can be turned off if required. See **66, SWITCHING DSC OFF**.

Hill Descent Control (HDC) is automatically engaged for some terrain response programs. If required, HDC can be deselected or engaged independently of terrain response. See **79, SELECTING HDC**.

The HDC status will be displayed in the message centre whether it is engaged, or disengaged, by the system or by the driver.

SYSTEM DIFFICULTIES

Use of an incorrect program will impair the vehicle's response to the terrain and can reduce the life of the suspension and drive systems.

If the system becomes partially inoperable for any reason, it may not be possible to select special programs and a relevant message will be displayed in the message centre.

If a participating vehicle system becomes temporarily inoperable, the General program will be automatically selected. Once the system returns to normal operation, the previously active program will be re-activated unless the ignition has been turned off in the meantime.

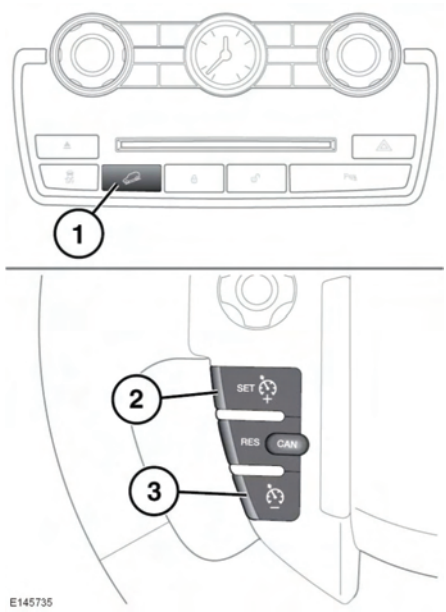
If the system becomes completely inoperable, all of the special program indicators will be switched off and a relevant message will be displayed in the message centre.

WADING

The maximum advisable wading depth is 500 mm (20 in). If the vehicle remains stationary in water above the door sill level, severe electrical damage may occur.

Do not switch off the engine when wading and avoid stopping. If the engine stalls, restart immediately. If water has entered the engine air intake, switch off immediately. The vehicle must be recovered from the water and be transported to a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

SELECTING HDC



1. Press to switch HDC on and off.

2. Press to increase the set speed.

3. Press to decrease the set speed.

HDC can be selected at speeds below 80 km/h (50 mph).

Manual transmission: HDC can be used in first or reverse gears.

Automatic transmission: HDC can be used in **D**, **R** or CommandShift **1**. When in **D**, the vehicle will select the most appropriate gear.

Note: *HDC is automatically selected by some of the Terrain response special programs.*

To select HDC, press and release the HDC on/off switch (**1**).

If the HDC warning lamp flashes, See **49, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (GREEN)**, HDC has been selected but is not operating. This is caused by the system's operating conditions not being met (e.g. vehicle speed too high).

If HDC is deselected while operating, the warning lamp will flash, See **49, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (GREEN)**, and the system will fade out, allowing the vehicle speed to gradually increase.

If the vehicle speed exceeds 80 km/h (50 mph) HDC will disengage and the HDC indicator will extinguish.

Note: *HDC is automatically deselected if the ignition is switched off for more than 6 hours.*

HDC OPERATION

With HDC engaged, the speed of descent can be altered using the cruise control steering wheel switches, as follows:

- To increase speed press and hold the **+** switch (**2**) until the desired speed is achieved.
- To decrease speed press and hold the **-** switch (**3**) until the desired speed is achieved.

When the switch is released, the selected speed will be maintained.

To increase or decrease speed gradually, tap the **+** or **-** switch as required. Each tap of the switch will increase/decrease the speed in increments/decrements of 0.5 km/h (0.3 mph).

The accelerator pedal can also be used to increase speed, up to the threshold in each gear.

Note: *Each gear has a pre-determined minimum speed.*

Descent speed will only increase on a slope steep enough to provide additional momentum. Therefore, use of the **+** switch on a gentle slope may not increase the speed.

When using HDC in manual transmission vehicles, depressing the clutch pedal will prevent HDC from controlling the speed of descent.

If the brake pedal is depressed, HDC will be overridden and the brakes will operate as normal. When the brake pedal is released, HDC will resume control of the descent.

If HDC is switched off during a descent via the brake pedal, HDC assistance will fade out gradually. This is to prevent loss of control if HDC is switched off in error. HDC will resume control when switched back on if assistance is still required but at the speed the vehicle is travelling when the brake pedal is released.

GRADIENT RELEASE CONTROL (GRC)

With HDC activated, if the vehicle is stopped on a slope using the foot brake, GRC will become active (except in Terrain response Sand program). During a hill ascent when the foot brake is released GRC will automatically delay and graduate the brake release, to allow the vehicle to move smoothly away. When descending a hill, a similar brake hold and gradual release is employed to provide a smooth transition into HDC control.

GRC operates in forward and reverse gears and requires no driver intervention.

WARNING MESSAGES



Do not attempt a steep descent if the HDC system is inoperative or if any HDC warning messages are displayed in the message centre.

BRAKE TEMPERATURE

In extreme circumstances, the HDC system may cause brake temperatures to exceed their pre-set limits. If this occurs the warning **HDC TEMPORARILY UNAVAILABLE** will be displayed in the message centre. HDC will then fade out and become temporarily inactive.

Once the brakes have reached an acceptable temperature, the message will disappear (or the warning indicator will extinguish) and HDC will, if required, resume operation.

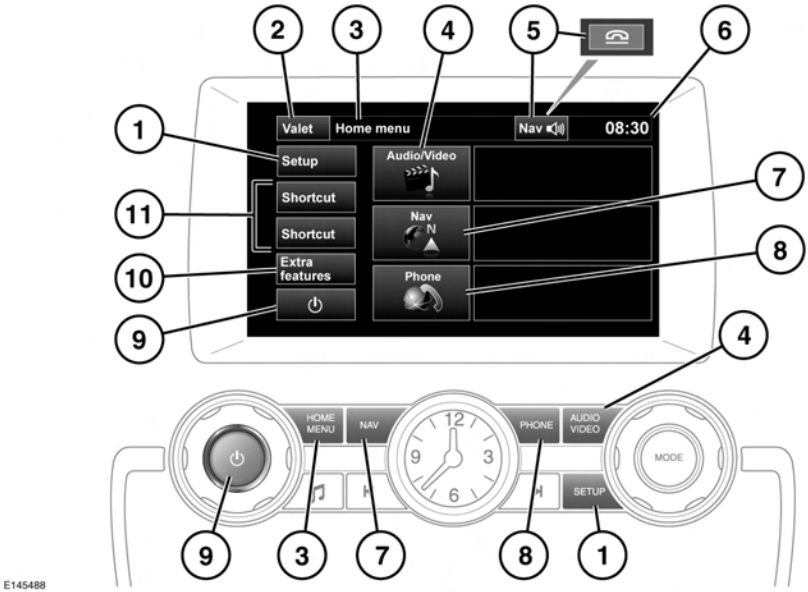
SYSTEM FAULT

If a fault is detected in the HDC system, **HDC FAULT SYSTEM NOT AVAILABLE** will appear in the message centre.

If the fault is detected whilst the system is operating, HDC assistance will fade out.

If a fault is detected, contact your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU



1. Touch to select the touch screen **Setup** menu.
2. Touch to select **Valet** mode. During menu mode, the icon is changed to the back soft key, touch to return to the previous screen displayed
3. Press to select the **Home menu**.
4. Touch or press to select the **Audio/Video** menu. See **84, AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS**.
5. While navigation is operating, touch to repeat the last given navigation instruction. During a phone call, the icon is changed. Touch to end the call.
6. Touch to adjust time/date.
7. Touch or press to select the **On road Navigation** menu. Current set destination is displayed.
8. Touch or press to select the **Phone** menu.
9. Press to turn on/off the screen.
10. Press to select the **Extra features** menu.
11. Touch to select Home menu shortcuts. See **82, TOUCH SCREEN SETUP**.

TURNING OFF THE TOUCH SCREEN

1. Press the screen on/off button once to activate the screensaver (see **81, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**). If the screensaver has not been set, a single press will turn off the touch screen.
2. Press the screen on/off button twice to turn off the touch screen.
3. To turn on the touch screen, press the screen on/off button.

TOUCH SCREEN USE

Always run the engine during prolonged use of the touch screen. Failure to do so may discharge the vehicle battery, preventing the engine from starting

Avoid spilling or splashing liquids onto the touch screen.

TOUCH SCREEN DISPLAY ICONS

Touch screen display icons are as follows (they may not all be displayed at the same time):



Audio/Video: Touch to select the Audio/Video menu.



Phone: Touch to select the Phone menu.



Navigation: Touch to select the Navigation menu.



Back soft key: Touch to return to the previous screen displayed.

TOUCH SCREEN CARE

Do not use abrasive cleaners on the touch screen. For approved cleaning products, contact your Dealer/ Authorised Repairer.

TOUCH SCREEN SETUP

- Select **Set-up** from the Home menu.

The setup screen is divided into categories:

- Screen
- System
- Voice
- Audio

SCREEN SETTINGS

Volume pop-up: Display Volume pop-up on/off.

Screensaver: Change screensaver.

Time out home: Sub menu selection screens can be set to revert to the **Home** menu after a pre determined length of time.

Theme: Changes appearance of the touch screen soft keys.

SYSTEM SETTINGS

Button feedback: Select to turn the soft key confirmation tone on/off.

Clock adjust: Select 12 or 24 hour clock. Set current time. Select **Date** to change the date, or to alter the date format. Select **Set**, to store new settings.

Note: *The clock can also be adjusted from the touch screen time display.*

Home menu shortcuts: Select up to two items from the displayed list to appear as shortcuts on the **Home menu**. Select **Clear** to deselect highlighted items.

Language: Select the required language. Select **Male** or **Female** voice. Touch **Change** to select alternatives for Voice and text displays. Follow the on-screen instructions to confirm.

Note: *Some languages are not yet available for both System display text and Voice control. In this event, it will be necessary to select a separate language for Voice control.*

Volume presets: Adjust volume for the available systems (announcements, parking aid, phone, voice etc.).

VOICE SETTINGS

- **Command list**: View the categories and the acceptable voice commands.

  Select an **Information** button to view alternative function commands.
- **Voicetags**: View the categories. Select a category to manage the voicetags for the chosen system. See **102, VOICETAGS**.
- **Operating guide**: View brief Voice system instructions. Select **Voice tutorial** for more detailed instructions (cancel via the displayed pop-up or by pressing and holding the voice button).
- **Preferences**: Select to alter the following settings:
  - **Voice profile**: The voice system can be trained to have a greater recognition of a particular voice or accent.The default setting is **Standard**. To build a voice profile for either **User 1** or **User 2**, it is necessary to complete a training program first.

    To complete the training for the first time, select either **User 1** or **User 2** and follow the on-screen and audible instructions.
  - **Voice feedback**: Select **On/Off**.
  - **Feedback volume**: Adjust using the +/- buttons. It is not possible to reduce the volume to zero.
- **Voice training**: Select to access the voice system training program, designed to enable the system to better recognise the vocal characteristics of a user.

  Select **User 1** or **User 2** and follow the on screen and audible instructions. See **102, VOICE TRAINING**.

The training session can be cancelled at any time by touching the on-screen pop-up or by pressing and holding the Voice button on the steering wheel. See **101, USING VOICE CONTROL**.

SELECTING VALET MODE

Valet mode allows the vehicle to be locked by a parking attendant. Valet mode prevents operation of the touch screen, to prevent access to telephone numbers or navigation addresses.

1. From the **Home** menu, select **Valet**.
2. If you wish to cancel the PIN, select **Delete**. If the PIN is cancelled, or incorrectly entered, you will be prompted to enter the PIN again.
3. **Valet on** is displayed to indicate that the PIN has been accepted.
4. **Valet mode activated** is displayed to indicate that the PIN has been accepted.

Valet mode On screen is displayed.

DESELECTING VALET MODE

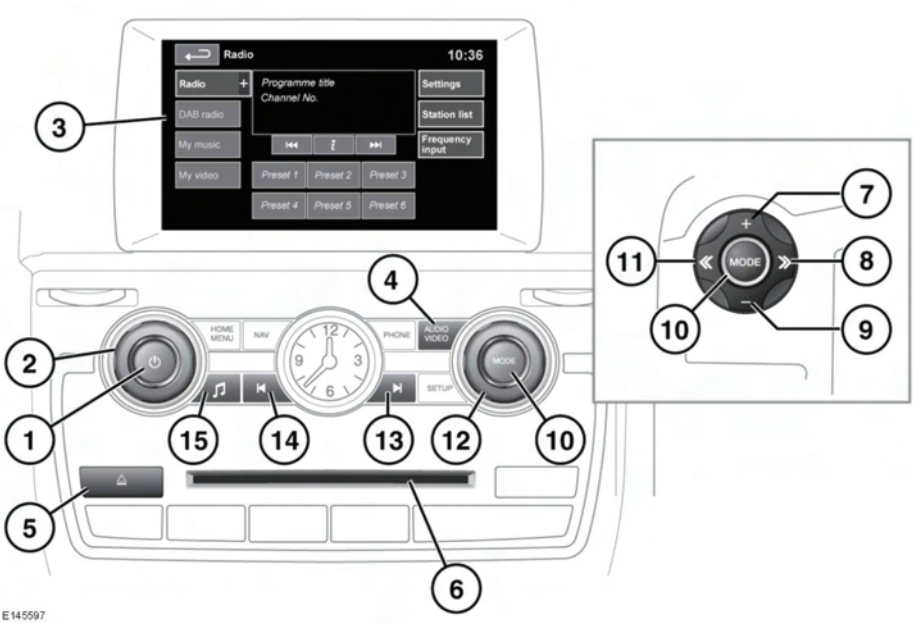
1. When you re-enter the vehicle, select the Valet mode screen.
2. Enter your four digit PIN and touch the **OK** button.

Valet mode deactivated is displayed to indicate that your PIN has been accepted.

- The touch screen will be enabled.

Note: *If the PIN is forgotten, Valet mode can only be deactivated by your Dealer/Authorised Repairer.*

AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS



E145597

Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

1. Press to switch the audio system on/off.

   Note: *The audio system will operate with the ignition on or off, but will always switch off when the ignition is switched off. Switch the audio on again if required.*

2. Rotate to adjust volume level.

   Note: *If volume is turned to zero while a CD is playing, the CD will pause play. Play will resume when a greater volume is selected.*

3. Touch screen
4. **AUDIO VIDEO.** Press for direct access to the **Audio/Video** menu.
5. CD/DVD eject button.
6. CD/DVD loading slot.

   The player will accommodate 1 disc at a time, but up to 10 CDs can be uploaded into the CD store. Only CDDA discs can be uploaded into the CD store.

   Only discs with CDDA tracks and no other type, can be uploaded to the Stored CD store.

   Insert a disc into the loading slot until resistance is felt. The player mechanism will complete the loading.

7. Press to increase volume for any source.
8. Seek up:

Short press:

- To select the next radio preset.
- To select the next track on chosen audio source - CD, MP3 etc.
- when telephone is in use, press to scroll up lists of calls or phonebook entries.
- To select the next DVD chapter.

Long press:

- To auto seek up the frequency to the next radio station.

9. Press to decrease volume for any source.

10. **MODE.** Press repeatedly to scroll through all audio/video sources.

11. Seek down:

Short press:

- To select the previous radio preset.
- To select the previous track or start of current track on chosen audio source - CD, MP3 etc.
- When telephone is in use, press to scroll down lists of calls or phonebook entries.
- To select the previous DVD chapter.

Long press:

- to auto seek down the frequency to the next radio station.

12. Menu navigation control: Rotate to scroll through menu items.

13. Seek up: Short press to auto-seek to the next radio station or next track on chosen audio source.

- Long press to activate manual-seek, scan forwards through a track.

14. Seek down: Short press to auto-seek to the previous radio station or previous track on chosen audio source.

15. Press to display the Tone menu.

AUDIO SETTINGS

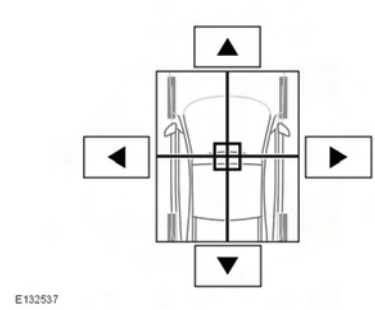
To view the audio settings menu, press the **Audio settings** soft key on the touch screen.

To adjust the sound settings:

1. Touch the **+** or **-** soft keys to adjust Bass, Treble or Subwoofer levels.
2. If surround sound is fitted, touch **DPLIIx, DTS Neo:6, Meridian Trifield** or select **Stereo** to switch surround sound off.

Note: *Surround sound options are not available for certain sources where the surround sound mode is set automatically.*

To adjust balance and fade:



1. From the Sound settings menu, select **Balance/Fade**.
2. Touch the arrow soft keys to move the sound focal point to the desired area of the vehicle. Alternatively, touch the sound focal point and 'drag' it to the required position.

LOADING DISCS

Do not force the disc into the slot.

Do not use irregular shaped CDs or DVDs and those with a scratch protection film or self-adhesive label attached.

- The CD unit will play compact discs that conform to the international Red Book standard audio specification. Playback of CDs not conforming to this standard cannot be guaranteed.
- Recordable (CD-R) discs and re-writable (CD-RW) discs may not function correctly.
- Recordable (DVD-R or DVD+R) discs may not function correctly.
- Dual format, dual-sided discs (DVD Plus, CD-DVD format) are thicker than normal CDs and consequently playback cannot be guaranteed, and jamming may occur.

It is recommended that only high quality 12 cm (4.7 in.) circular discs are used.

The unit will play Compact Disc Digital Audio (CDDA) discs, MP3, WMA, WAV and AAC files.

The CD/DVD player will accommodate one CD or DVD disc at a time but up to 10 CDs can be uploaded onto the virtual store.

Only CDDA discs can be loaded into the virtual CD store.

LICENSING



E135227



E132539

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories.

Dolby, Pro Logic, and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.



E132540

Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent #'s: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535; 7,003,467 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS, the Symbol, and Neo:6 are registered trademarks, & DTS Digital Surround and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



E132541



E132542

Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent #'s: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS and the Symbol are registered trademarks, & DTS 2.0+ Digital Out and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



E132543

DivX Certified® to play DivX® video.

DivX®, DivX Certified® and associated logos are registered trademarks of DivX, Inc. and are used under license.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO: DivX® is a digital video format created by DivX, Inc. This is an official DivX Certified device that plays DivX video. Visit www.divx.com for more information and software tools to convert your files into DivX video.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) content. To generate the registration code, locate the DivX VOD section in the device setup menu.

1. Follow the route, Home Menu - Audio Video - My video - Settings - VOD.
2. An eight digit code will be displayed. This is your unique DivX code. Make a note of this code and keep it for future reference.

Go to http://vod.divx.com with this code to complete the registration process and learn more about DivX VOD.

Covered by one or more of the following U.S. Patents: 7,295,673; 7,460,668; 7,515,710; 7,519,274.



E132544

Music and video recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, please visit www.gracenote.com.

CD, DVD, Blu-ray Disc, and music and video-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents owned by Gracenote apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDDB, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

GRACENOTE® END USER LICENSING AGREEMENT

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California (“Gracenote”). The software from Gracenote (the “Gracenote Software”) enables this application to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information (“Gracenote Data”) from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, “Gracenote Servers”) and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

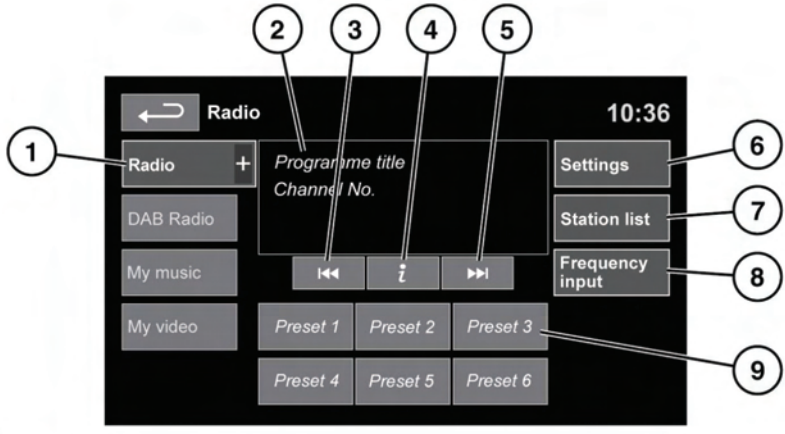
The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from in the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© Gracenote, Inc. 2009

RADIO CONTROLS



1. **Radio**: Waveband selection. Touch to view and select a waveband. The radio will tune to the last used station on that waveband. Touch again to close.

   The waveband selection box will close automatically after 5 seconds without use.
2. Displays information about the current station.
3. Seek down:
   - Short touch to auto seek down the frequency to the next radio station.
   - Long touch to activate manual seek mode. Further short touches change the frequency in single decrements. A further long touch will scan backwards through the current waveband until the soft key is released.
4. Information. More information from the broadcasting station.
5. Seek up:
   - Short touch to auto seek up the frequency to the next radio station.
   - Long touch to activate manual seek mode. Further short touches change the frequency in single increments. A further long touch will scan forwards through the current waveband until the soft key is released.
6. **Settings**: Touch to view and activate/deactivate the following features: **RDS**, **Traffic**, **News**, **AF** and **REG**. See **123, RADIO DATA SYSTEM (RDS)**.
7. **Station list** (FM only): Select to view a list of available stations on the waveband. The list can be sorted by **Frequency**, **Name** or **PTY** (pop, news, sport etc.) by selecting the appropriate soft key. Touch to select the chosen station.

   If the stations are sorted by category, touch the chosen category to view and select a corresponding station.

   Autostore (AM only): Select to store up to 6 of the strongest stations on the AM waveband.

8. **Frequency input**: Select to enter a known frequency of a station on the current waveband, using the numeric keypad that appears. Select OK or wait for 2 seconds to tune to the entered frequency.
9. **Station presets**: Each waveband has 6 preset positions.
    - Touch and release to tune to the station stored on that preset.
    - Touch and hold to store the current station on that preset (the radio will mute while the station is stored then beep).
    - Use the seek buttons on the steering wheel to change to the next or previous preset station.

RADIO DATA SYSTEM (RDS)

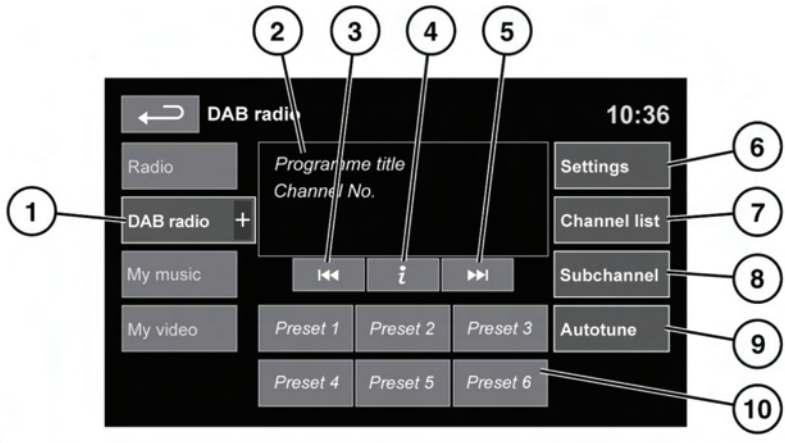
Your radio is equipped with RDS which enables the audio unit to receive additional information with normal FM radio signals.

Note: *Not all FM radio stations broadcast RDS information.*

Select **Settings** to view or alter RDS settings.

- **Traffic/News**: Provides local travel or news information.
- **Regionalisation (REG)**: Select to prevent the radio tuning into an alternative local station that has a stronger signal.
- **Alternative Frequency (AF)**: Select to allow the radio to automatically re-tune to a stronger alternative frequency for the current station. This is useful on a journey where the vehicle travels through different transmitter areas.

DAB RADIO CONTROLS



1. **DAB Radio**: Touch to view and select a DAB band (**DAB 1**, **2** or **3**). The radio will tune to the last used channel on that band. Touch again to close.

   The DAB band selection box will close automatically after 5 seconds without use.
2. Indicates currently selected DAB band (**DAB1**, **2** or **3**).
3. Seek down:
   - Short touch to seek previous available channel.
   - Long touch to seek previous available Ensemble. The first channel in the new Ensemble will be selected.
4. Channel information: Touch to view DAB text and channel information.
5. Seek up:
   - Short touch to find the next available channel.
   - Long touch to find the next available Ensemble. The first channel in the new Ensemble will be selected.
6. **Settings**: Touch to view the DAB Settings menu:
   - **Options**: To activate/deactivate FM Traffic and Link DAB and to alter DAB country and format settings (with vehicle stationary).
   - **Announcements**: Select an alarm announcement and up to 3 other announcement types (traffic, news etc.) from the list. The selected announcements will interrupt the current programme when broadcast.

7. **Channel list**: Touch to view a list of available Ensembles and channels. The list can be sorted by **Ensemble**, **Channel**, **Subchannel** or by **Category**.
   - If an **Ensemble** is selected from the list, all available channels from that ensemble will be displayed.
   - Sorting by **Subchannel** is only available when the current channel is broadcasting subchannels.
   - If **Category** is selected, touch the chosen category to view corresponding channels, before making your selection from the list.

   Once the desired selection has been made, select the Back soft key to return to the main DAB menu.
8. **Subchannel**: If subchannels are broadcast by the current channel, this soft key will be active. Select to allow subchannels then select the required subchannel with the seek down / up keys.
9. **Auto-tune**: Select to scan for all available DAB Ensembles/channels. This needs to be done before using the DAB radio for the first time.

   Auto-tune is also useful when travelling long distances, so regional Ensembles can be tuned.

   During Auto-tune, a pop-up shows tuning progress.

   The Auto-tune process will not affect current presets, but some presets may not operate if the channel they relate to is no longer available (**No reception** displays).
10. Station presets: Each DAB band has 6 preset positions.
    - Touch and release to tune the radio to the station stored on that preset.
    - Touch and hold to store the current station on that preset (the radio will mute while the station is stored).
    - Use the seek buttons on the steering wheel to select the next or previous preset station.

    Note: *If you attempt to select a preset channel that is now unavailable or invalid,* ***No reception*** *is displayed.*

DAB RADIO SETTINGS

In **Settings**:

- If the **Link DAB** setting is switched on and the signal strength for a channel falls below an acceptable level, the audio unit will automatically search other available ensembles for a channel with the same name.

  If an alternative local channel is found, the new channel is played automatically after few seconds. If the channel is not found after a few seconds, the message **No reception** is displayed.

  The word **Link** is displayed at the top of the touch screen when **Link DAB** is enabled.
- Select **DAB country** if driving into another country. Scroll through the country options to choose the appropriate one. This will prompt an auto tune.

  Note: *This option is disabled while the vehicle is moving.*
- Choose **DAB format** if moving to a region that uses a different digital band. Available formats are:
  - L Band
  - Band III
  - L Band & Band III
  - L Band Canada
  - L Band Can & Band III

  This will prompt an auto tune.

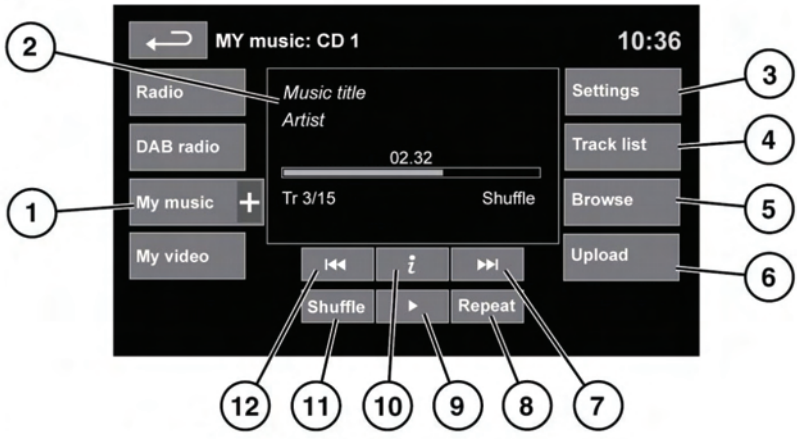
  Note: *This option is disabled while the vehicle is moving.*

ENSEMBLES

Unlike AM/FM radio, DAB transmits several channels/stations on a single frequency. A group of channels is known as an ensemble. Some channels within the ensemble may have subchannels offering several listening options.

If reception is lost when the vehicle is in motion, the vehicle may be out of range of the ensemble. To build a new list of ensembles, select **Auto-tune**.

PORTABLE MEDIA CONTROLS



E145640

See **84, AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS**.

My music includes CD, iPod, USB, AUX and Bluetooth devices. The full infotainment system also includes Stored CD.

1. Touch the **My music** icon to display all options. Select an option.

   Note: *When switching between iPod and USB media devices, select the* **iPod** *or* **USB** *icon from the* **My music** *screen.*

   Note: *Sound quality and volume levels available from devices connected to the auxiliary input may vary widely.*

2. Display of information about the current track, including elapsed run-time. Some of this information is also displayed in the instrument panel.

   Note: *Only connected devices that support ID3 shall have the information displayed.*

3. **Settings**: Select to switch traffic and news announcements on or off. Additionally, for MP3 recorded media, you can select the number of list entries that are skipped when you use the page up/down arrows when navigating a list.

4. **Track list**. Select to view current CD or Stored CD track list. Select a track to start playback.

5. **Browse**. (iPod, USB and Stored CD modes only).

   - Select to view the contents of the connected device which are displayed as dictated by the file structure.
   - Select a file to start playback (Browse view will remain). Select a folder or subfolder to view their contents.
   - To return to the Controls menu, select the Back soft key.

     Note: *If the iPhone is connected via a USB cable so that Audio can be played or for phone charging, Bluetooth Audio is disconnected.*

6. **Upload**: Applicable to Stored CD menu only.

   Select to view and manage the CDs loaded onto the CD store.

   - Select **Upload** alongside an empty slot to upload the current CD. There are 10 slots available.
   - If the CD store is full, select **Replace** to overwrite an existing CD.

   In each case a confirmation pop-up will appear. Select **Yes** to continue.

   Note: *Loading time is dependent on content type. A % count up is displayed. Other features can be selected while upload is in progress.*

7. Skip/Scan forward:
   - Touch and release to skip to the next track.
   - Touch and hold to scan forwards through the current track. Play will resume when the soft key is released.

8. Repeat:

   In **CD** mode

   - Touch and release to repeat the current track continuously until Repeat mode is cancelled. **Repeat track** is displayed.
   - Touch and release again to repeat the current Stored CD (or folder for MP3 discs) continuously until Repeat mode is cancelled. **Repeat disc** or **Repeat folder** is displayed.
   - Touch and release a third time to cancel Repeat mode.

   Note: *Selecting* **Shuffle** *(***10***) will cancel Repeat mode, but* **Repeat track** *can be selected with Shuffle mode active (cancels the previously selected shuffle mode).*

   In **USB** or **iPod** mode

   - Select to repeat the current track.
   - Select again to repeat the current folder (USB) or to cancel repeat mode (iPod). Select again to cancel repeat mode in USB.

   Note: *Repeat mode is not available for Bluetooth® devices.*

   Note: *Selecting* **Shuffle** *(***10***) will cancel Repeat mode.*

9. Pause/Play: Select to pause playback. Select again to resume playback.

10. Information. More information about the current track.

11. Shuffle:
    - Touch and release once to play random tracks from the current CD, MP3 folder, USB folder or iPod playlist. A **Shuffle** message is displayed.
    - Touch and release again to play random tracks from CD, MP3 disc, USB folders or tracks on the media device or tracks loaded onto the CD store. **Shuffle all** is displayed.
    - Touch and release again to cancel Shuffle mode

    Note: *Shuffle mode is not available for Bluetooth® devices.*

12. Skip/Scan backward:
    - Touch and release within 3 seconds of track playback to skip to the previous track.
    - Touch and release after 3 seconds of track playback to skip to the beginning of the current track.
    - Touch and hold to scan backwards through the current track. Playback will resume when the soft key is released.

PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS

Portable media devices can be connected to the media hub located in the cubby box. Compatible portable devices include:

- USB mass storage devices (e.g. a memory stick). Devices must use FAT or FAT32 file format.
- iPod (iPod Classic, iPod Touch, iPhone and iPod Nano are supported - full functionality for older devices cannot be guaranteed). iPod Shuffle functionality cannot be guaranteed.
- Auxiliary device (personal audio, MP3 players, all iPods).

  Note: *Auxiliary devices have no touch screen control.*

If you are connecting an iPod, mass storage or Bluetooth® device, use the touch screen to operate and search the device. Many of the controls are similar to those available for CD play.

Please disconnect your iPod when leaving the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in the iPod battery discharging.

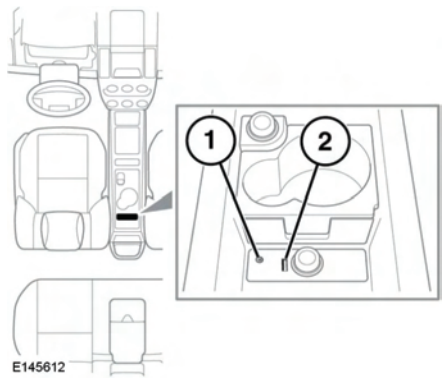
Note: *The audio system will play MP3, WMA and AAC files.*

To maximise playback quality, it is recommended that lossless compression is used for any media files on USB or iPod. Failing this, it is recommended that compressed files utilise a minimum bitrate of 192 kb/s (a higher bitrate is strongly recommended).

Note: *iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer Inc., registered in the US and other countries.*

Note: *Some MP3 players have their own file system that is not supported by this system. To use your MP3 player, you must set it to USB Removable Device or Mass Storage Device mode. Only music that has been added to the device in this mode can be played.*

CONNECTING A DEVICE



1. 3.5 mm AUX socket.

2. USB socket.

Connect the device into the appropriate socket.

Note: *Use the cable supplied with your media device to connect to the USB socket.*

When an iPod is connected, playback will continue from the point at which it was last playing, provided the iPod battery is in a good state of charge.

Do not plug non-audio devices into the USB port.

Note: *A USB hub cannot be used to connect more than one USB device to the audio unit.*

Note: *Devices connected to the USB ports will be charged, but devices that are fully discharged will not play.*

Note: *Options such as* **Repeat** *and* **Mix** *relate to the device currently playing, they will not apply to any subsequent device.*

The 3.5mm AUX socket allows additional equipment (e.g. personal stereos MP3 player, hand-held navigation unit, etc.) to be connected to the audio system.

Note: *iPod shuffle may be connected via the AUX socket.*

PLAYING A PORTABLE DEVICE

If you are using a USB mass storage device or approved iPod, you can control playback using the touch screen controls.

If you are using a Bluetooth® device, you can control playback using the touch screen, but some controls are unavailable.

If you are using any portable media device via the AUX socket, then you must control playback from the device itself.

Land Rover does not recommend the use of a Hard Disc Drive via the USB link while the vehicle is in motion. These devices are not designed for in car use and may be damaged.

CONNECTING MULTIPLE DEVICES

Do not plug non-audio devices into the USB port.

You can connect multiple devices simultaneously to the portable media interface and switch between them using the touch screen. Select **iPod, USB**, **Bluetooth** or **AUX**, to switch between modes.

The device docked first will remain the active device until you choose to change.

If, after changing to the newly-docked device, you change back to the first device, play will resume at the point you left it (iPod and USB only).

Note: *You cannot use a USB hub to connect more than one USB device to the audio unit.*

Note: *Devices connected to the USB port will be charged, but devices that are fully discharged will not play.*

Note: *Options such as* ***Repeat*** *and* ***Shuffle*** *relate to the device currently playing, they will not apply to any subsequent device.*

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE MEDIA PLAYER

For further information on Bluetooth®, see **103, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.

Note: *The process of pairing and connecting your media device with the vehicle, using the media device, will vary depending on the type of media device.*

1. Switch on the ignition and ensure the touch screen is active.
2. From the Home menu, select **Audio/Video**, then **My music**.
3. Touch **Bluetooth**.
4. A menu will appear. Select **Change device**.
5. Select **Device to vehicle** option.

   Note: *The vehicle's Bluetooth® system is only discoverable for 3 minutes.*
6. Using the media device, search for Bluetooth® devices. On some media devices, this is referred to as new paired device. See your media device's operating instructions for further information.
7. When the vehicle's Bluetooth® system is discovered, follow the on-screen instructions. Select **Yes** when prompted, to confirm the pairing.

   Either your device or the vehicle system will ask for a PIN (Personal Identification Number). When prompted, enter a PIN of your choice and select **OK** to confirm.
8. Enter the same PIN into the other device.
9. Once your device is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message will be displayed, before switching to the **My music**, Bluetooth® screen.

   Note: *Some media devices do not automatically connect and need to be manually connected, via the device or by using the* ***Change device*** *option.*

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE TOUCH SCREEN

For further information on Bluetooth®, see **103, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.

1. Switch on your device's Bluetooth® connection. Make sure that it is in Bluetooth® discoverable mode, sometimes referred to as find me mode (see your device's operating instructions for more information).
2. Switch on the ignition and ensure the touch screen is active.
3. From the Home menu, select **Audio/Video**, then **My Music**.
4. Touch **Bluetooth**.
5. A menu will appear. Select **Change device**.
6. Select **Vehicle to device** option.
7. Identify your device from the displayed list and select the corresponding **Pair and connect** option.

   Note: *If more than 5 devices are detected, it may be necessary to use the scroll bar to see the entire list.*
8. When prompted, enter the PIN (Personal Identification Number) code into your device. See your device's operating instructions for more information.
9. Once your device is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message will be displayed before switching to the **My music**,Bluetooth® view.

Note: *Due to the duration of a Bluetooth® search, it is advised that the time-out to home screen feature is switched off before attempting to search for Bluetooth® devices. This setting can be changed within* **Set-up***,* **Screen***,* **Time out home***.*

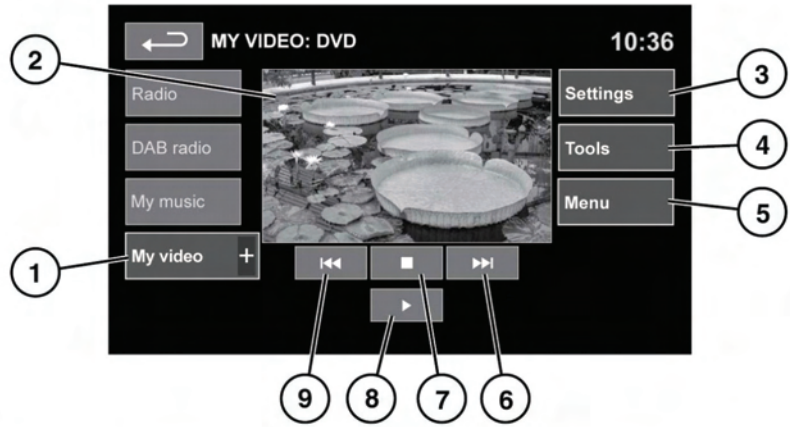
LOSS OF CONNECTION

If a loss of connection between the vehicle and the Bluetooth® device occurs, a pop-up is displayed. Select **Reconnect** to automatically restore the connection. A confirmation pop-up will appear before the touch screen reverts to its previous mode.

CHANGING/DISCONNECTING A DEVICE

1. From the menu, select **Change device**.
2. Select **Disconnect**. A confirmation pop-up will appear and then you will be given the option to **Search new** or select a different device from the list of paired devices.

VIDEO MEDIA PLAYER CONTROLS



E145641

1. **My video**: Video input selection.

   Touch the + icon to view and select DVD or other forms of video media (CD/USB), provided the relevant media is present. The selected option will be displayed.

   Note: *After 5 seconds without use, the My video menu will close.*

2. Preview screen for video media information: Touch to select full screen mode.

   Short touch the screen again to view the controls at any time.

   To return to preview mode, touch and hold the full screen view.

3. **Settings**. Depending on the video media specification, there are 3 sub-menus within settings: **Options**, **VOD** (Video On Demand) and **Audio settings**.

   VOD allows playing of DivX VOD content from video media. The eight digit registration code will be displayed when the VOD soft key is touched.

   The player must also be registered with DivX. See **86, LICENSING**.

4. **Tools**: The following options can be selected:
   - GOTO: The GOTO menu allows you to access specific parts of the video, by **Chapter** or **Title number**.
   - Subtitles.
   - Angle.
   - Audio.
   - Top menu.

5. **Menu**: Select to view the Video media menu. On some screens this may be replaced by a **Browse** soft key.

6. Seek up: Select to view the next DVD chapter or previous chapter of the video media.

7. Select to pre-stop playback. A second touch will stop and reset the DVD.

8. Select to start/restart play.

9. Seek down: Select to view the previous DVD chapter or previous chapter of the video media.

For information on the CD/DVD loading slot and eject button, and the use of the audio/video controls on the audio unit and steering wheel, see **84, AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS**.

VIDEO MEDIA INHIBIT WITH VEHICLE MOVING

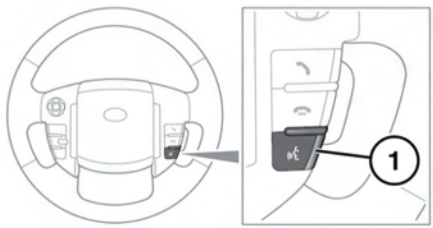
When the vehicle is moving the video picture will automatically be inhibited. The touch screen will display the **My video** screen and the relevant safety message will be displayed.

FULL SCREEN VIEW

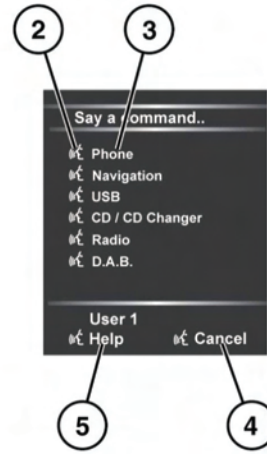
When full screen mode is selected, the seek controls operate in the same manner as they do in preview mode.

Use the relevant soft key to select the **4:3**, **16:9** or **Zoom** option to magnify the picture.

USING VOICE CONTROL



E145576



Note: *The voice system has been designed to recognise a number of languages. However, Land Rover cannot guarantee the system will be compatible with every accent group within those languages. Please speak to your Dealer/Authorised Repairer about testing the Voice System for compatibility with a particular accent group.*

1. Voice button: Press briefly to start a voice session. Press and hold to cancel a voice session.

   Note: *Briefly press the Voice button during a voice session, to interrupt audible feedback. Wait for the tone to sound before giving the next command.*

2. Voice symbol: Indicates that a command is available. Wait for the symbol to appear and a tone to sound before using the command.

3. Command list: Appears in the instrument panel, providing feedback and available commands at each stage of the voice session. Say an available command.

   Note: *As the commands are listed before the system is ready to listen, it is important to wait for the voice symbol to appear alongside the relevant command, before using the command.*

4. When displayed, say **Cancel** to cancel the current voice session.

5. When displayed, say **Help** to get assistance during a voice session.

   Note: *The currently selected user (User 1 or User 2) is identified at the bottom of the command list.*

   Note: *If a listed item is longer than the available space on the menu,* **...>** *will appear. Use the seek controls on the steering wheel to view the entire entry. See* ***84, AUDIO/VIDEO CONTROLS****.*

VOICE TUTORIAL

To listen to a tutorial detailing the operation of the Voice system:

1. Briefly press the Voice button to start a voice session.

2. Wait for the tone to sound, then say **Voice tutorial**.

Alternatively, the tutorial can be selected using the touch screen, as follows.

1. Select **Setup** from the touch screen Home menu.
2. Select **Voice** from the Setup menu.
3. Select **Operating guide** from the Voice settings menu.
4. Select **Voice tutorial**.

The voice tutorial can be cancelled at any time by selecting **Cancel** on the on-screen pop-up or by pressing and holding the Voice button.

VOICE TRAINING

This is a feature designed to enable the system to better recognise the vocal characteristics of a user, once the training has been completed. To carry out Voice training:

1. Select **Setup** from the Home menu.
2. Select **Voice** and from the Setup menu.
3. Select **Voice training** from the Voice settings menu.
4. Select **User 1** or **User 2**, to start the training.
5. Follow the on-screen and audible instructions.

The training session can be cancelled at any time by selecting **Cancel** from the on-screen pop-up or by pressing and holding the Voice button.

VOICETAGS

Voicetags enable the user to personalise the Voice system so that a single name can be used to call-up a navigation destination, telephone number or radio channel.

To add a Voicetag:

1. Briefly press the Voice button to start a Voice session.
2. Wait for the tone to sound then say **Phone**, **Navigation** or **Radio**.
3. Say **Store voicetag**.

Alternatively, Voicetags can be managed via the touch screen as follows:

1. Select **Setup** from the Home menu.
2. Select **Voice** from the Setup menu.
3. Select **Voicetags** from the Voice settings menu.
4. Select the system which the Voicetag is to activate (**Phone**, **Navigation** or **Radio/DAB**).

Follow the on-screen and audible instructions.

NAVIGATION POI VOICE COMMANDS

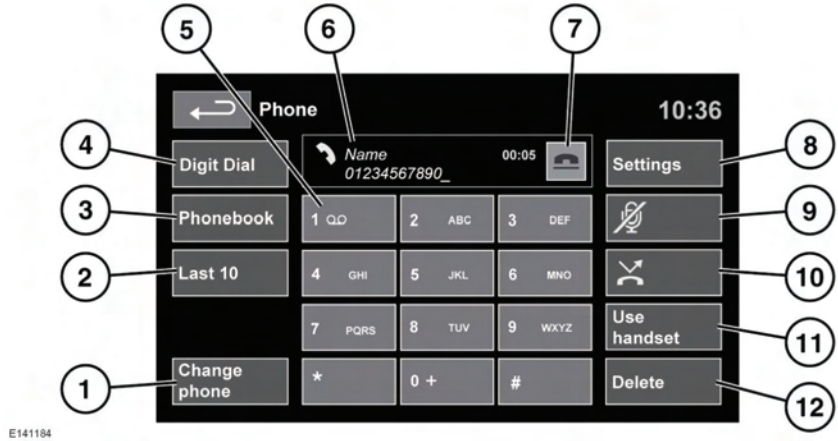
To request the display of POI (Point Of Interest) identifiers on the navigation display:

Say **Navigation**, followed by the name of the desired POI category from the following list:

- Petrol station/Petrol.
- Parking/Car park.
- Land Rover Dealer.
- Hospital.
- Golf course.
- Tourist information.
- Restaurant/I'm hungry.
- Shopping centre.
- Hotel.
- Motorway service.
- Town centre.

Icons will appear on the navigation display, indicating the locations of the selected POI. For further information about POIs, see **115, CATEGORIES AND SUB-CATEGORIES**.

TELEPHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW



1. **Change phone.** Search new or change to another paired phone.
2. **Last 10.** Access the last 10 dialled, received and missed calls.
3. **Phonebook.** Access the downloaded phonebook.
4. **Digit Dial.** Access Digit Dial mode.
5. Touch and hold to retrieve your Voice mail.
6. Status display: Displays the name and/or number dialled and call duration.
7. Call Connect/Disconnect icons. Touch to send/accept or end/reject a call.
8. **Settings.** Access Voice mail set up, Answer options and Phone options.
9. **Mute microphone.** Initiate Privacy mode. While selected, the caller will not hear you talking.
10. Auto reject. When active, any incoming calls will be rejected or diverted to voice mail (depending on mobile phone settings).
11. **Use handset.** Switch the call to your mobile phone.
12. **Delete.** Touch to delete the last entered digit, and hold to delete the whole entered number.

BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION



Bluetooth® is the name for short-range radio frequency (RF) technology that allows electronic devices to communicate wirelessly with each other.

The Land Rover Bluetooth® system supports Bluetooth® Hands-Free Profile (HFP), Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP) and Audio Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP).

Note: *HFP and A2DP/AVRCP profiles can be connected independently, so a phone can be connected via one, while a media device can be connected via the other, at the same time.*

Before making use of the vehicle's Bluetooth phone system, your Bluetooth phone must be paired and connected to the vehicle system. This is done using one of two methods; via your phone to the vehicle or from the touch screen to your phone. If one of these methods is not successful, try the other option.

Each time the ignition is switched on the system will attempt to connect with the last connected phone.

As mobile phones have a wide range of audio and echo characteristics, it may take a few seconds for the vehicle system to adapt and deliver optimum audio performance. To achieve this, it may be necessary to reduce the in-vehicle volume and ventilation fan speed slightly.

TELEPHONE SAFETY

Switch off your telephone in areas with a high explosion risk. This includes filling stations, fuel storage areas or chemical factories, as well as places where the air contains fuel vapour, chemicals or metal dust.

Always stow your mobile phone securely.

The functioning of cardiac pacemakers or hearing aids may be impaired when the phone is in use. Check with a doctor or manufacturer whether any such devices you or your passengers are using, are sufficiently protected against high-frequency energy.

The Health Industry Manufacturers' Association recommends that a minimum separation of 15 centimetres (six inches) is maintained between a wireless phone antenna and a pacemaker, to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. These recommendations are consistent with the independent research by, and recommendations of, Wireless Technology Research.

TELEPHONE COMPATIBILITY

Please refer to the Owners section of the Land Rover website at **www.landrover.com**, for a list of compatible phones.

Note: *The Bluetooth® equipped phones listed, have been tested for compatibility with Land Rover vehicles. Performance will vary, based on the phone's software version, battery condition, coverage and your network provider. Phones are warranted by their manufacturer, not Land Rover.*

If the mobile phone supports Bluetooth® Hands Free Profile 1.5 (HFP 1.5), additional features will be displayed on the vehicle touch screen, such as battery meter, signal strength and network operator.

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE

Note: *The process of pairing and connecting your phone with the vehicle using the mobile phone will vary depending on the type of mobile phone used.*

1. Switch the ignition on and ensure that the touch screen is active.
2. From the home menu, select **Phone**.
3. A menu will appear. Select **Search new**.
4. Select **Device to vehicle** option.

   Note: *The vehicle's Bluetooth® system is discoverable for only 3 minutes.*

5. Using the mobile phone, search for Bluetooth® devices.

   On some phones, this is referred to as new paired device. See your phone's operating instructions for further information.

6. When the vehicle's Bluetooth® system is discovered, follow the on-screen instructions. Select **Yes** when prompted, to confirm the pairing.

   Either the phone or the vehicle system will ask for a PIN (Personal Identification Number). When prompted, enter a PIN of your choice and select **OK** to confirm.

7. Enter the same PIN into the other device.

8. Once your phone is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message will be displayed before switching to the Digit Dial screen.

   Note: *Some mobile phones require the Bluetooth® pairing to be set as 'authorised' or 'trusted' in order to automatically connect. Please refer to your phone's operating instructions for further information.*

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE TOUCH SCREEN

1. Switch on your mobile phone's Bluetooth® connection. Make sure that your mobile phone is in Bluetooth® discoverable mode, sometimes referred to as find me mode (see your phone's operating instructions for more information).

2. Switch the ignition on and ensure the touch screen is active.

3. From the home menu select **Phone**.

4. A menu will appear. Select **Search new**.

5. Select **Vehicle to device** option.

6. Identify your phone from the displayed list and select the corresponding **Pair and connect** option.

   Note: *If more than 5 phones are detected, it may be necessary to use the scroll bar to see the entire list.*

7. When prompted, enter the PIN code into your phone. See your phone's operating instructions for more information.

8. Once your phone is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message will be displayed before switching to the Digit Dial screen.

Note: *Due to the duration of a Bluetooth® search, it is advised that the timeout to home screen feature is switched off before attempting to search for Bluetooth® devices. This setting can be changed within* **Vehicle**, **Syst settings**, **Display set**, **Timeout to home screen**.

CHANGING THE CONNECTED PHONE

Up to 10 mobile phones can be paired with the vehicle in the same way. However, only one can be connected and ready for use as a phone at any one time.

To connect a different paired phone to the vehicle, follow the steps below:

1. From the home menu, select **Phone**.

2. A menu will appear. Select **Change phone**.

3. Identify and select your phone from the displayed list.

4. Once your phone is connected to the system, a confirmation message will be displayed before switching to the Digit Dial screen.

TELEPHONE SYSTEM ICONS


Connect. Use to send or accept a call and access last 10 calls list.


Disconnect. Use to end or reject a call.


No phone connected.


Phone signal strength indicator.


Phone battery level indicator.


Bluetooth. Indicates that a Bluetooth® device is connected.

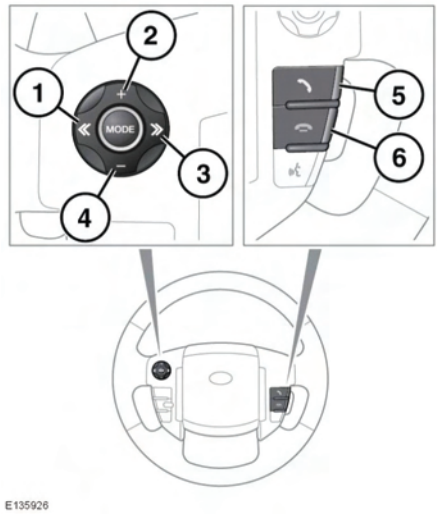

Tick. Indicates that a Bluetooth® device is paired.


Voicemail. Press and hold to dial the stored voicemail number.


Scroll bar up arrow. Use to scroll up lists of detected phones, calls or phonebook entries.


Scroll bar down arrow. Use to scroll down lists of detected phones, calls or phonebook entries.

STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



E135926

1. Press to scroll up a displayed list.
2. Press to increase volume when in a call.
3. Press to scroll down a displayed list.
4. Press to decrease volume when in a call.
5. Press and release to access last 10 dialled list or dial a number/contact. Press and hold to access phonebook list view.
6. Press to end a call or to reject an incoming call.

Note: *When scrolling through a phonebook or last 10 list, each contact is also displayed in the message centre.*

CALL VOLUME

The phone call volume is operated by the audio system's volume control.

If the audio system is in use when a phone call is active, the audio system source is suppressed for the duration of the call.

PHONEBOOK

Contacts stored in the memory of a paired phone can be automatically downloaded to the vehicle's phonebook each time the phone is connected to the system. See **104, TELEPHONE COMPATIBILITY**.

Certain phones store the phonebook in two different areas, the SIM card and the phone memory. The vehicle system will access only those numbers stored in the phone memory.

To access contacts from the phonebook:

1. From the Phone menu, select **Phonebook**.
2. Using the keyboard, select the letter you wish to search under.
3. Select **List** to view the phonebook.
4. Identify the required contact from the displayed list and touch to call. If a contact has more than one number stored, select the required number from the list.

   Note: *It may be necessary to use the scroll bar to see the entire list.*

   There are also options to view more contact information, by selecting the corresponding **i** key.

If your phone supports contact type data, you will be able to see a contact type icon in the vehicle's phonebook directory. These can be seen on the right-hand side of each contact in the directory and will indicate one of the following types:


Default.


Mobile.


Home.


Work.

THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

Navigation instruction is by map and turn information displayed on the touch screen and can be complemented by voice guidance if required. The system uses signals from Global Positioning System (GPS) satellites combined with information from vehicle sensors and from data stored on the hard drive, to establish the true vehicle position.

Note: *Mapping data loaded on the hard drive is relevant to the market in which the vehicle is first sold and will provide guidance and information only for that area. Your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer will have details of software updates.*

Using this combination of data sources the vehicle navigation computer enables you to plan and follow a route map to your desired destination.

The touch screen is used to control navigation via menus, text screens and map displays.

Operate the system only when it is safe to do so.

The requirements of national Road Traffic Regulations always apply.

Observation of traffic signs and local traffic regulations always take priority.

The navigation system serves solely as an aid to navigation. In particular, the navigation system cannot be used as an aid to orientation when visibility is poor.

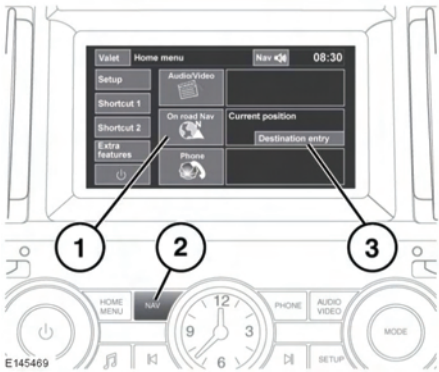
GPS signals may occasionally be interrupted due to physical barriers such as tunnels and roads under raised highways.

However, direction and speed sensors on the vehicle will minimise any adverse effect on the navigation system. Normal operation will resume once the obstruction has been passed.

Under certain conditions it is possible for the vehicle position shown on screen to be incorrect. This may happen when:

- Driving on a spiral ramp in a building.
- Driving on or beneath elevated roads.
- Two roads are close and parallel.
- The vehicle is transported to another destination.
- After the vehicle is rotated on a turntable.
- After vehicle battery disconnection.

USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM



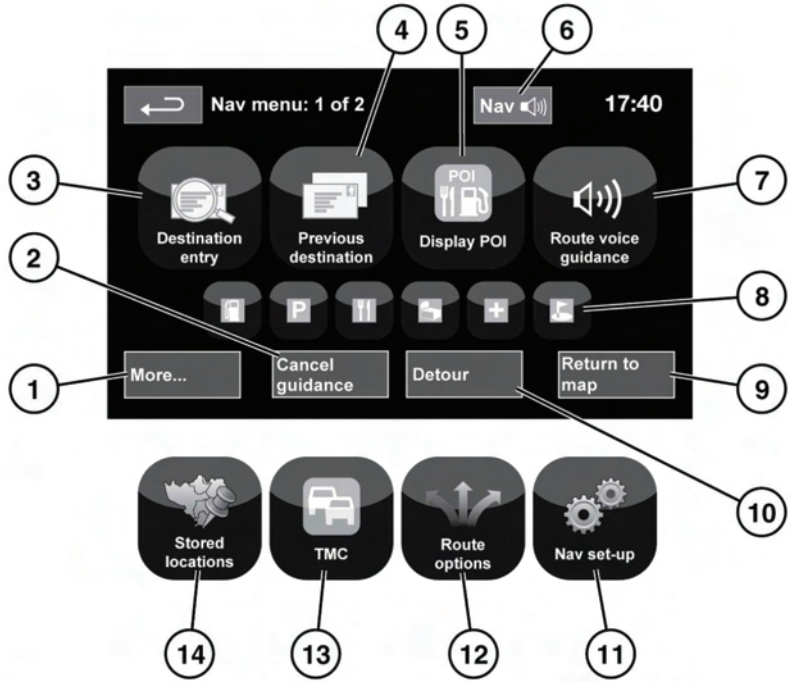
1. **Navigation** soft key, touch for navigation.
2. **Destination entry**. Touch for destination entry menu.
3. **NAV** shortcut button, press for navigation.

If the navigation screen language has not been set, select **Language**, and touch **OK** to confirm. The **CAUTION** screen will return.

After touching **Agree**, the touch screen will display the previously displayed map view. This will show the current vehicle position. Touch the **Nav menu** soft key to display the main menu screen.

At this point, the first time user should set up personal preferences in the **Nav set-up** area. These settings are applied whenever navigation is used.

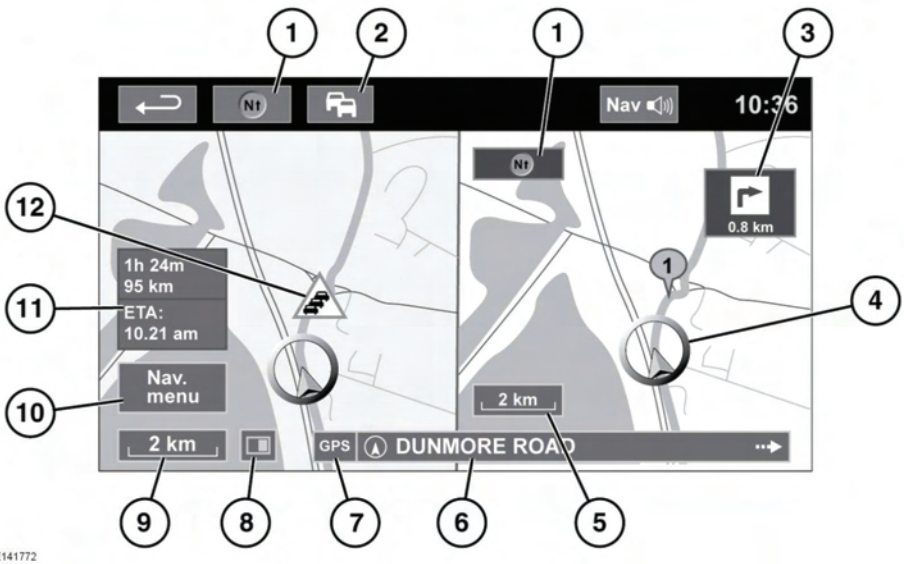
MAIN MENU



1. **More…**: Displays the other Nav menu screen.
2. **Cancel guidance**: Cancels current route guidance.
3. **Destination entry**: Provides a choice of options for entering a destination.
4. **Previous destination**: Displays previous destinations entered.
5. **Display/Hide POI**: Turns the POI (Point Of Interest) icons on the map on/off.
6. When a destination is set, the Land Rover logo is replaced by a soft key which enables the last voice instruction to be repeated.
7. **Route voice guidance**: Allows the voice guidance messages to be turned off for the current journey. The soft key is highlighted while voice guidance is enabled.
8. Quick POI shortcuts. This provides the option to quickly enter a destination of a local POI. The categories can be changed in the Navigation setup menu.

9. **Return to map**: Advances to the main map screen.
10. **Detour**: Allows a detour from the current route.
11. **Nav set-up**: Settings for the navigation system.
12. **Route options**: Allows selection of various options for the route.
13. **TMC** (Traffic Message Channel): Not used for entering a destination but, when enabled, will provide data about road conditions and any events that may affect the journey.
14. **Stored locations**: Manages the stored locations.

MAP SPLIT SCREEN



1. Compass (always indicates North). Press to select: North up, heading up or bird's eye map style.
2. TMC (Traffic Message Channel) signal. Without a diagonal bar, a signal is being received; with a diagonal bar, a signal is not being received. The icon will also change colour depending on the status of traffic on the route.
3. Next direction display. When intersection map view has been switched off, touch icon to view again.
4. Current vehicle position and direction.
5. Right map view, scale/zoom setting.
6. Current location.
7. GPS signal indicator. The indicator is only displayed when there is no reception.
8. Screen selection.
9. Left map view, scale/zoom setting.
10. Opens Navigation menu 1 of 2 screens.
11. Distance/miles to destination.

12. TMC event (traffic congestion).



Touch to close the Intersection and Motorway junction view. The previously displayed map is shown after closing.

MAP AUTO ZOOM

When under guidance the map zooms in automatically when approaching an intersection or motorway junction.

1. From the map screen, touch the left map view, scale/zoom soft key.
2. Touch the **Auto zoom** soft key. The soft key will be highlighted when auto zoom is enabled.

SCREEN MODES

Touch the screen mode selection key to view a series of icons, each depicting a different screen mode (as detailed below). Touch the relevant icon to select the desired screen mode.



Full screen view.



Split screen view.



Shows list of turn directions on the right half screen.



Guidance screen: Shows detailed view of the next junction on motorway or intersection view on non-motorway roads, in the right half of screen.



Motorway information: This view is only available when travelling on a motorway. It displays automatically to show remaining motorway exits along your route.

To turn off the Guidance or Motorway information screens, proceed as follows:

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **More…**.
2. Select **Nav set-up**.
3. Touch **User settings**.
4. Touch **Guidance screen** or **Motorway information** to deselect the option.
5. Touch **Ok** to confirm.

SEARCH AREA

The navigation map database is divided into countries, or areas of countries, called search areas. When setting a route, the destination (or waypoint) entered must be in the currently selected search area.

Before attempting to set a destination or waypoint, set the correct search area as follows:

1. Select **Destination entry** from the main navigation menu.
2. Touch **More…**.
3. Touch **Search area**.
4. Scroll through the list and select the 3 letter code that corresponds to the desired destination area.
5. Select **Ok**. The destination entry menu is shown and the information window shows the currently selected search area.

SETTING A DESTINATION

1. After touching **Agree**, the initial map screen is displayed, now touch **Nav menu**.
2. From the Navigation Menu, touch **Destination entry**.
3. Touch **Address** from the **Destination** screen and input the town name or postcode.
4. Once sufficient letters have been entered, touch **Ok** or **List** to display all the possible towns.
5. If necessary, use the scroll arrows to the left of the list to search up or down. Select the town you require.
6. Now enter the road name. Once sufficient letters have been entered, touch **Ok** or **List** to display all the possible roads.
7. Select the road you require. Enter the house number of the address (if known) then touch **Ok** to confirm.
8. If the house number is not known, select **Ok**, the end of the road is then used as the destination.
9. The map screen showing the selected destination details is displayed. Touch **GO** to calculate the default quick route, or **Review route** for alternative routes.
10. Touch **GO** to start journey.

START GUIDANCE

After selecting **Review route**, the system will calculate the route.

1. There is now a choice to select **3 Routes**, **Change route** or select **GO**, to start navigation guidance.
2. Touch **3 Routes** to display a choice of 3 different route options on the map. The roads on the map are drawn in 3 different colours to highlight each route. EcoRoute helps you find the most fuel efficient route available. A display of 3 leaves indicates the most fuel efficient route.
3. Select route **1**, **2** or **3** by touching the respective box displayed on the right side of the map.
4. Touch **Change Route** followed by **Route prefs.** to change the route settings. If a destination is already set, touch **Waypoint** to add a waypoint in the journey if required.
5. When you have made your selection, if any, touch **GO**

Note: *As you approach a junction, in addition to the voice guidance, an inset on the map will display an enlarged view of the junction.*

AVOID POINTS

When calculating a route, an area to avoid can be set and stored.

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **More…**.
2. Select **Stored locations**.
3. Select **Avoid points**.
4. Select **Add**.
5. Select the location of area to avoid from the **Destination entry** menu. Touch **Ok** to activate the view where the size of the area to avoid can be set.
6. Touch **Ok** to activate the area to avoid. The size of the area can be adjusted.
7. Touch **Ok**, the area to avoid is now set and stored.

To edit or delete an area to avoid from the stored list.

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **More…**.
2. Select **Stored locations**.

3. Select **Avoid points**.
4. From the sub menu, select **Edit** or **Delete**.

EASY ROUTE

In **Route options**, **Easy Route** can be turned **On** or **Off**.

When **On** is selected, **Easy Route** changes the calculation parameters of **Route 3** in order to reduce:

- Junctions.
- Turns.
- Turns that cross traffic.
- The priority of minor roads.
- Complex junctions and manoeuvres.

LEARN ROUTE

In **Route options**, **Learn Route** can be turned **On** or **Off**.

When **On** is selected, if you make the same deviation from the proposed route 3 times, then the system will memorize the deviation and offer that as the normal route from then on. Select **Reset all routes** to delete any learnt routes and return to the default settings.

VOICE GUIDANCE

To turn voice guidance on or off but maintain route guidance, proceed as follows:

1. Touch **Nav menu** on the navigation screen.
2. Touch the **Route voice guidance** soft key. The soft key will be highlighted when voice guidance is enabled.

CANCEL ROUTE GUIDANCE

To cancel route guidance, proceed as follows:

1. Touch **Nav menu** on the navigation screen.
2. Touch the **Cancel guidance** soft key.

QUICK POI SELECTION

1. Touch the Map to display the additional options
2. Touch the **Point of interest** (POI) soft key.
3. The screen shows six suggested categories, 5 of which can be selected as quick points of interest.
4. Select a Quick POI category, or touch **More** to see further POIs. Touch **Ok** to confirm a selection.
5. The map with the POI icon(s) is displayed. Scroll the map to the POI icon, then touch **Set destination** to set and calculate route.
6. Touch **GO** to start journey.

RESTORE SYSTEM DEFAULTS

From the navigation menu, select **Nav set-up**. If you have made any changes to the system's default settings, use this menu to restore the original settings.

FAVOURITES

This enables you to manage destinations such as, place of work, home, favourite restaurant.

From the favourites sub menu in stored locations, you can save up to 400 stored favourites.

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **More…**.
2. Select **Stored locations**.
3. Touch **Favourite**.
4. To store a favourite, select **Add** from the submenu.
5. Select any destination entry method and confirm desired location.

FAVOURITES DETAILS

1. From the **Stored locations** menu, select **Favourite**.
2. Select **Edit** or **Delete**.
3. Touch the selected favourite to display the details.
4. Select the chosen detail to edit. Details include Attribute, Name, Phone number, Location and Icon.

HOME

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **More…**.
2. Select **Stored locations**.
3. Touch **Home location**.
4. To store a home location, select **Add** from the submenu.
5. Select any destination entry method to set your home location. Touch **Ok** to confirm.
6. Touch **Ok** from the favourite summary, home location is now set.

POSTCODE

Not all countries have this facility.

1. From the **Nav menu** select **Destination entry**.
2. Touch **Postcode**. Enter the postcode of your waypoint or destination from the keypad. The postcode must be entered precisely, including any spaces or punctuation.
3. When the postcode has been entered touch **Ok**.

EMERGENCY

Not all countries have this facility. Touch **Emergency** on the **Destination entry** screen to display a list of local police stations, hospitals or Land Rover Dealerships.

Press **Name** to display the list in alphabetical order or **Distance** to display the list in order of proximity to the current vehicle location.

Touch the name of the facility to set it as a destination or waypoint.

MAP

Scroll the map to the area of your destination or waypoint, zooming in if required.

This location can be stored as a favourite, destination or waypoint.

COORDINATES

From the navigation menu, select **Destination entry**. Select **More…** and then **Coordinates**.

If you know the coordinates of your destination they can be entered from this screen. The full latitude must be entered first before the longitude coordinates can be entered.

When the coordinates have been entered, touch **OK**.

If the coordinates entered are not contained within the area covered by the available maps, a message will be shown. This can also occur if the incorrect coordinates have been entered.

RECALLING A PREVIOUS DESTINATION

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **Previous destination**.
2. Touch your previous destination from the list. The map showing the selected destination is displayed.
3. Touch **GO** to start journey.

MOTORWAY

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **Destination entry**.
2. Touch **More…**.
3. Touch **Motorway Entry/Exit**.
4. Enter the motorway name or number, or select from **List**.
5. Touch **Entrance** or **Exit**.
6. Enter the entrance or exit name for the chosen motorway, or select from **List**. The map showing the selected motorway and junction is displayed.
7. Touch **GO** to start journey.

POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **Destination entry**.
2. Touch **More…**.
3. Touch **Point of interest**.
4. Touch **POI name** and touch **Ok** to confirm.
5. Enter POI name, or select from **List**.
6. Alternatively, choose **Category** to see all categories of POI and make your selection. See **115, CATEGORIES AND SUB-CATEGORIES**.
7. To narrow the search area, touch **Town** to enter a town name
8. Once the POI has been selected, the map showing the selected destination is displayed.
9. Touch **GO** to start journey.

Note: *If entering a POI name results in too many matches being listed, try entering the town name first. If you do not know the name of the POI you want, try selecting a POI category.*

Note: *POI icons can only be displayed up to the 1 km (½ mile) zoom level.*

DEALER LOCATIONS

Details of Land Rover Dealers are held on the Navigation System as a point of interest category, under car/automotive category. See **116, LOCAL POI SEARCH**.

CATEGORIES AND SUB-CATEGORIES

The POI database is divided into a number of categories. Each main category is further divided into a number of sub-categories.

Touch the desired category, then choose desired sub-categories.

MY POI

Additional POIs can be downloaded and added to the list. Free POIs can be found on the internet.

Connect a USB device containing the POIs. See **96, CONNECTING A DEVICE**.

Note: *POIs must be in GPX format.*

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **More…**.
2. Select **Stored locations**.
3. Touch **My POI**.
4. Select **Add** to individually select each POI group to be downloaded. Select **Edit** to change **Name**, **Icon** or **Sound icon**. Or select **Delete**.

LOCAL POI SEARCH

Use to select points of interest close to the vehicle position.

1. From the **Nav menu**, touch **Destination entry**.
2. Touch **More….**
3. Touch **Point of interest**.
4. Touch **POI near current** and touch **Ok** to confirm.
5. Select POI category, if required select again from sub-category and touch **Ok** to confirm.
6. Touch **Show List** or **Select Category** to make further selections.

   Note: *Up to 5 categories can be chosen to select a POI from.*
7. Select your POI destination from the list. The map showing the selected destination is displayed.
8. Touch **Destination** to set and calculate route.
9. Touch **GO** to start journey.

Note: *Nav POI near current position can be set as a Home menu shortcut. See* ***82, TOUCH SCREEN SETUP****.*

ARABIC NAVIGATION

To turn Arabic navigation on or off.

1. From the Home menu, touch **Set-up**.
2. Touch **System**.
3. Touch Language and select Arabic navigation **On**.
4. Select **Yes** to continue with Arabic navigation.

Note: *SWYS voice system is not compatible with Arabic navigation.*

RDS-TMC OVERVIEW

RDS-TMC (Radio Data System-Traffic Message Channel) is a feature that announces traffic hold-ups on your route as broadcast by radio stations that transmit TMC information.

Touch the **TMC** button on the Navigation Menu to access the TMC menu.

TMC events ahead on route can be displayed by touching the **Events ahead** soft key. TMC can be set to display on the map for all events, for major events or can be switched off. During route calculation, it can be set to avoid TMC events along the route.

RDS-TMC DISPLAY

When a TMC signal is received the icon in the top left of the screen will appear green. If a TMC signal is not being received, the icon will be shown with a bar through it.

The system will inform the driver of any roadworks, narrow road, contraflow, accidents, slippery road, diversion, information, parking information, congestion or other hazard.

The driver is informed of a traffic event as follows:

- A TMC Event icon shown on the map at the location of the event.
- Text can be displayed showing the details of each occurrence which can be selected either by touching the screen icon or from the traffic information list.
- Dynamic route guidance, which calculates an alternative route when the system receives the traffic event warning affecting the route currently set in the navigation system.
- Traffic event list shows all events sorted by road name/ distance on your selected route in a straight line or along your actual route.

The information regarding the hold-up is maintained and updated even if the vehicle crosses into another country.

RDS-TMC ICONS

Any traffic event (broadcast on TMC) in your area, will be displayed as a warning icon on the map and an alert may be displayed as a message giving the road number(s) and between which junctions the hold-up or event occurs.

This data is stored in the system for up to of 15 minutes.

The colour of the TMC icon changes in order to show the type and priority of a TMC event. The background colour of the icon returns to normal when there is no longer an event or hold-up, or if any re-route instructions are calculated.

The TMC Event icons appear on the navigation map display to indicate the location and nature of a TMC event.

TMC Event icons will appear on the map, even if the event does not occur on your route.



Incident (Red star)



Moving Tailback Ahead (Red arrow)



Moving Tailback Both Carriageways (Red double arrow)



Slow Traffic Ahead (Yellow arrow)



Slow Traffic Both Carriageways (Yellow double arrow)



Information (Yellow circle)



Incident (Yellow star)

Note: *Single arrow icons indicate that the traffic event affects traffic travelling in the direction of the arrow. Double arrows indicate that both directions are affected.*

If the map is scrolled to any of the above events, further details are available and are indicated as one of the following icons.



Closed Road



Special Warning (orange triangle)



Danger (red triangle)



Stationary Traffic



Congestion



Delay



Diversion



Contraflow



Event



Height Width Limit

USING TMC

Dynamic route guidance will calculate an alternative route to avoid a traffic event when the system receives an event warning. The system calculates a new route for all sections. However, if any waypoints are set, the system calculates for the next waypoint. If the event on route is serious (closed road) or if the new route is shorter than the current one and the current one was not recalculated within the last 5 minutes, then a message to confirm the new route will be displayed. This pop-up message will be displayed for 5 minutes and if the new route is not rejected, then the vehicle will stay on current route.

ORDNANCE SURVEY DATA

Please read this agreement carefully before using the Navigation System.

This is a licence agreement to use the Ordnance Survey (OS) Code-Point data incorporated in the Navigation System. By using this Code-Point data you accept and agree to all the terms and conditions below.

OWNERSHIP

The OS Code-Point data is licensed by Ordnance Survey with permission of Her Majesty's Stationery Office. © Crown Copyright. All rights reserved.

LICENCE GRANT

OS grants you a non-exclusive licence to use your copy of the OS Code-Point data for your personal use solely as part of the Navigation System. You may transfer the licence to a subsequent purchaser of the vehicle with which the Navigation System is supplied, provided that the purchaser agrees to abide by each of the terms of this licence.

LICENCE TERMS

These licence terms are governed by English Law and are subject to the exclusive jurisdiction of the English courts.

LIMITATIONS OF USE

The DATABASE is restricted for use in the specific system for which it was created. Except to the extent explicitly permitted by mandatory applicable laws, you may not extract or re-utilise substantial parts of the contents of the DATABASE, not reproduce, copy, modify, adapt, translate, disassemble, decompile, or reverse engineer any portion of the DATABASE.

LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

The price of the DATABASE does not include any consideration for assumption of risk of consequential, indirect or unlimited direct damages which may arise in connection with your use of the DATABASE.

Accordingly, in no event shall NAVTEQ Corporation or supplier of the navigation system using the DATABASE ('Supplier') be liable for any consequential, special, incidental or indirect damages, including without limitation, loss of revenue, data, or use, incurred by you or any third party arising out of your use of the DATABASE, whether in an action in contract or tort or based on a warranty, even if NAVTEQ Corporation or the Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. In any event, NAVTEQ Corporation's liability for direct damages is limited to the price of your copy of the DATABASE.

THE DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY, SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT, DO NOT AFFECT OR PREJUDICE YOUR STATUTORY RIGHTS WHERE YOU HAVE ACQUIRED THE DATABASE OTHERWISE THAN IN THE COURSE OF A BUSINESS. Some states and laws do not allow the exclusion of implied warranties, so the above disclaimer may not apply to you.



The DATABASE reflects reality as existing before you received the DATABASE and it comprises data and information from government and other sources, which may contain errors and omissions. Accordingly, the DATABASE may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, and due to the nature of the sources used. The DATABASE does not include or reflect information on - inter alia - neighbourhood safety; law enforcement; emergency assistance; construction work; road or lane closures; vehicle or speed restrictions; road slope or grade; bridge height, weight or other limits; road or traffic conditions; special events; traffic congestion; or travel time.

NAVTEQ CORPORATION

Please read this agreement carefully before using the Navigation System.

This is a licence agreement for your copy of the Navigable Map Database, (the 'DATABASE') originally made by NAVTEQ Corporation), used in the Navigation System. By using this DATABASE you accept and agree to all the terms and conditions below.

OWNERSHIP

The DATABASE and the copyrights and intellectual property or neighbouring rights therein are owned by NAVTEQ Corporation or its licensors.

LICENCE GRANT

NAVTEQ Corporation grants you a non-exclusive licence to use your copy of the DATABASE for your personal use or for use in your business' internal operations. This license does not include the right to grant sub-licenses.

LIMITATIONS OF USE

The DATABASE is restricted for use in the specific system for which it was created. Except to the extent explicitly permitted by mandatory applicable laws, you may not extract or re-utilise substantial parts of the contents of the DATABASE, not reproduce, copy, modify, adapt, translate, disassemble, decompile, or reverse engineer any portion of the DATABASE.

TRANSFER

You may not transfer the DATABASE to third parties, except together with system for which it was created, provided that you do not retain any copy of the DATABASE, and provided that the transferee agrees to all terms and conditions of this agreement.

DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY

NAVTEQ Corporation does not warrant or make any representations regarding, either express or implied, regarding the use or results of the use of the DATABASE in terms of its correctness, accuracy, reliability, or otherwise and expressly disclaims any implied warranties of quality, performance, merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose or non-infringement.

NAVTEQ Corporation does not warrant that the DATABASE is or will be error-free. No oral or written information or advice provided by NAVTEQ Corporation, your supplier or any other person shall create a warranty.

LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

NAVTEQ Corporation does not warrant or make any representations regarding, either express or implied, regarding the use or results of the use of the DATABASE in terms of its correctness, accuracy, reliability, or otherwise and expressly disclaims any implied warranties of quality, performance, merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose or non-infringement.

NAVTEQ Corporation does not warrant that the DATABASE is or will be error-free. No oral or written information or advice provided by NAVTEQ Corporation, your supplier or any other person shall create a warranty.

GOVERNMENT END USERS

If the DATABASE is for a region of North America and is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, the DATABASE is licensed with 'limited rights'.

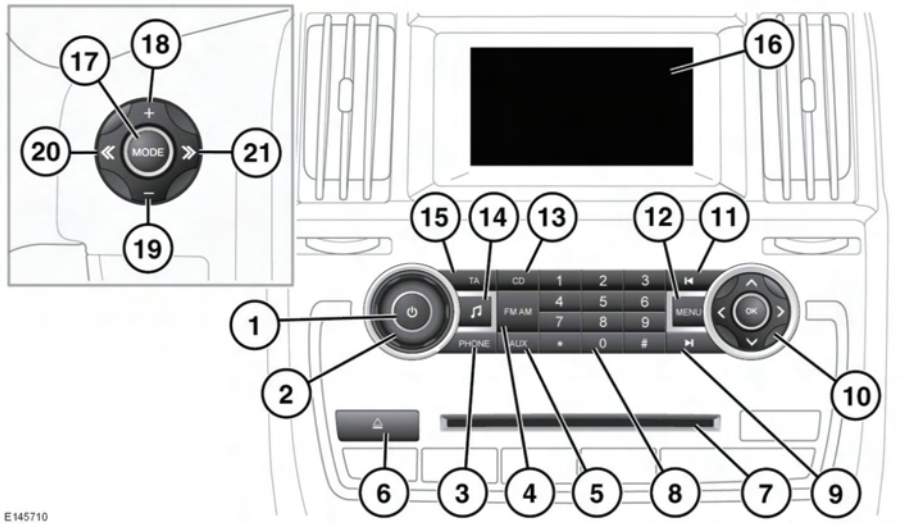
Utilization of the DATABASE is subject to the restrictions specified in the 'Rights in Technical Data and Computer Database' clause at DFARS 252.227–7013, or the equivalent clause for non-defence agencies. Manufacturer of the DATABASE of North America is NAVTEQ Corporation, 10400 W. Higgins Road, Suite 400, Rosemont, Illinois 60018, USA.

EUROPEAN DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

CE

Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this DN-NS-019 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

STANDARD AUDIO SYSTEM CONTROLS



E145710

Sustained exposure to high sound levels can damage your hearing.

Note: *The maximum volume level will be restricted if the audio unit is used with the engine switched off.*

1. Audio system on/off: Press to switch on and off.

   Note: *The audio system will switch off automatically after 10 minutes if the ignition is turned off.*

2. Volume control: Rotate to adjust volume.

   Note: *The maximum volume level will be restricted if the audio system is used with the engine switched off.*

3. **PHONE**: Press to select telephone menu. See **106, TELEPHONE SYSTEM ICONS**.
4. RADIO waveband select (FM, FMAST, AM, AMAST, plus if fitted DAB1, DAB2).
5. **AUX** input select.
6. CD eject button.
7. CD loading slot.
8. Keypad.
9. Seek up:

   Short press to select the next station upward in frequency or, to select the next track on chosen audio source.

   Long press to enter radio manual seek mode or, to scan forward through a CD track.

   In radio manual seek mode further short presses will change the frequency in single increments.

10. **OK** and menu navigation control.

    Use the menu navigation control to move to any menu cursor/highlight. When the required option is highlighted, press the **OK** button to select.

11. Seek down:

    Short press to select the previous radio station downwards in frequency or, to select the previous track on chosen audio source.

Long press to enter radio manual seek mode or, to scan backwards through a CD track.

In radio manual seek mode further short presses will change the frequency in single increments.

12. **MENU**: Press to select audio system menu, with the following options:
    - Audio settings.
    - Clock settings.
    - Language.
13. **CD**: Press to select CD mode.
14. Tone: Press to select the tone menu.
15. **TA**: Traffic information.
16. Audio system information display.
17. **MODE**: Press repeatedly to scroll through all audio modes.
18. Steering wheel volume up.
19. Steering wheel volume down.
20. Seek down:

    Short press to select the previous radio preset or the previous track on chosen audio source.

    Long press to scan backwards through a track.
21. Seek up:

    Short press to select the next radio preset or the next track on chosen audio source.

    Long press to scan forwards through a track.

ADAPTIVE VOLUME CONTROL (AVC)

The AVC feature adjusts the volume level to compensate for the changes in road noise as the vehicle speed increases or decreases.

Note: *The AVC setting represents the volume increase and not the volume level.*

If the AVC level is set to **zero**, there will be no volume increase. With a low level setting, the volume increase at speed will be minimal. If a high level setting is used, there will be a noticeable increase of volume at greater speed.

To set the AVC level:

1. Press the **MENU** button, then using the menu navigation control (**10**) press up or down to select **AUDIO settings** to access the volume settings menu. Select **Adaptive Vol**.
2. Use the left and right buttons on the menu navigation control (**10**) to adjust the AVC setting.
3. Press **OK** to confirm the selection.

TONE ADJUSTMENT

Press the Tone button (**14**) to display the Tone menu. The settings for bass, treble, balance and fade can be adjusted using the navigation buttons. Press **OK** to store the settings and return to the previous screen.

Note: *If no adjustment is made within 10 seconds, the display will revert to the previously displayed screen.*

AUTO STORING RADIO STATIONS

AutoStore can be used to store the stations with the strongest signals available, either from the AM or the FM waveband.

Using Autostore:

1. Press **RADIO** button (**4**) to select the desired waveband.
2. Find a station. If necessary, use the seek buttons (**9** and **11**).
3. Press and hold the **RADIO** button until the display confirms that Autostore is in progress.

The system will search for stations with the strongest signals on the selected waveband. While the search is in progress, volume is muted.

When the search is complete, the previous volume level will be restored. The radio will switch to the FM-AST or AM-AST waveband where the strongest signal stations have been stored on the Autostore presets.

Note: *AutoStore will store up to a maximum of the 10 strongest signals available and overwrite the previously stored stations.*

Note: *The AutoStore waveband can also be used to store stations manually, in the same way as other wavebands.*

RADIO STATION PRESETS

This feature allows favourite stations to be stored so that they can be recalled later.

1. With the RADIO button (**4**), select a waveband.
2. Tune to the required station. The station will begin to play.
3. Press and hold one of the keypad buttons.
4. The station will be stored under the selected number. Volume will mute momentarily as confirmation.
5. Release the keypad button.

This can be repeated on each waveband and for each preset button.

When in radio mode, stored stations can also be selected by pressing the menu navigation control (**10**). Scroll to the desired preset station and press **OK**.

Note: *When driving to another area of the country, FM stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies and are stored on preset buttons, may be updated with the correct frequency for that area.*

RADIO DATA SYSTEM (RDS)

Your audio unit is equipped with RDS, which enables the audio unit to receive additional information with the normal radio signals.

On the FM waveband, RDS enables the audio to receive traffic and news information broadcasts. RDS also allows the audio to automatically re-tune to stations that are linked to the same network, if that network allows this.

Note: *Not all FM radio stations broadcast RDS. If a non-RDS station is selected, RDS features will not be available.*

REGIONALISATION (REG)

As you drive into different radio reception areas, RDS automatically re-tunes the radio to the strongest signal. When REG is on, the tuner is locked to the current local radio station. With REG switched off, the tuner is allowed to switch to a stronger Enhanced Other Network (EON) when the current EON linked radio station signal becomes weak.

To enable/disable regionalisation:

1. Press the **MENU** button (**12**).
2. Select **Audio Settings** on the screen menu.
3. Select **Regional mode**.
4. Press **OK** to enable or disable REG.

ALTERNATIVE FREQUENCY (AF)

Some radio stations broadcast on different frequencies in different parts of the country. If the selected station signal weakens, the radio will automatically re-tune to a stronger Alternative Frequency (AF), if one is available. This feature is particularly useful on long journeys, where the vehicle travels through different transmitter areas serving the same radio station.

To enable/disable AF:

1. Press the MENU button (**12**).
2. Select **Audio Settings** on the screen menu.
3. Select **ALTERNAT. FREQ.** Turn AF on or off.
4. Press **OK**.

SELECTING TRAFFIC INFORMATION

Normal reception can be interrupted to broadcast traffic information from stations on the FM waveband or Radio Data System (RDS) and Enhanced Other Network (EON) links.

When a radio station capable of providing traffic information is selected, the **TP** indicator appears on the top line of the display.

Briefly press the **TA** button (**15**) to select the Traffic Announcement (TA) function. The **TA** indicator appears on the top line of the display.

As soon as a traffic announcement is received, the current entertainment source (CD, USB, iPod or Radio) is interrupted and the message **Traffic** appears in the main display area, along with the name of the station providing the information.

If a non-traffic station is selected or recalled using a preset button, the audio unit will remain on that station unless **TA** is turned off, then on again.

TRAFFIC ANNOUNCEMENT VOLUME

Traffic announcements interrupt normal broadcasts at a preset minimum level that is usually louder than normal listening volumes. To adjust the preset volume, use the volume control to make the necessary adjustment during an incoming TA broadcast. The display will show the level selected.

All subsequent traffic announcements will be at the set volume.

CANCELLING AN ANNOUNCEMENT

To cancel an announcement, briefly press the **TA** button or alternatively the **MODE** button (**17**) on the steering wheel during the announcement. This will not turn off TA.

Note: *If **TA** is pressed at any other time, all announcements will be switched off.*

SWITCHING OFF TRAFFIC INFORMATION

Briefly press the **TA** button (the **TA** indicator will disappear from the top line of the display). This action will prevent traffic information broadcasts from being received, until the feature is reselected.

SELECTING NEWS INFORMATION

Normal reception can be interrupted to broadcast news bulletins from stations on the FM waveband or Radio Data System (RDS) and Enhanced Other Network (EON) linked stations, in the same way that traffic information is provided.

To set the NEWS feature:

1. Press the MENU button (**12**).
2. Select **Audio Settings** on the screen menu.
3. Select **News**.
4. Press OK to enable or disable the News feature.

To cancel an announcement, see **124, CANCELLING AN ANNOUNCEMENT**.

Note: *Both traffic and news information can be selected at the same time. However, the radio will always give priority to traffic information.*

DIGITAL (DAB) RADIO

If your vehicle is equipped for digital radio, press the RADIO button (**4**) to select either of two groups DAB1 or DAB2. These two groups permit the storing of a total of 20 preset stations or 'services' (ten in each group) using the buttons 0-9 on the keypad (**8**).

DAB radio can significantly increase the number of radio stations available. The DAB signals are transmitted to most major cities, towns and motorway networks.

Unlike AM/FM radio, digital transmits several services on a single frequency. This group of services is known as an ensemble. There may be a number of ensembles receivable in some areas, each typically carrying between six and twelve services.

Digital radio is transmitted from regional and local transmitters. Some services are national or regional and are replicated on multiple transmitters throughout the region or country. Other services are local and only available within a limited range of one transmitter.

FINDING DIGITAL SERVICES

Press the Seek-up (**9**) or Seek-down (**11**) buttons to search the waveband to find the local active ensembles. Note: Alternatively the steering wheels buttons (**20** and **21**) perform the same function. A manual tuning function is also available, see **126, DAB MANUAL TUNING**.

The national channels use the same ensembles throughout a country and so there is usually no need to search for these. If you have stored your favourite national channels already then they will usually be found immediately on the same pre-set buttons.

If reception is lost when the vehicle is in motion, the vehicle may be moving out of range of the ensemble. Use the Seek-up (**9**) or Seek-down (**11**) buttons, or manual tuning, to search for services which are stronger in that area.

Note: *If any auxiliary electrical equipment is connected to the vehicle, DAB radio reception capability may be reduced.*

SELECTING AND STORING DIGITAL SERVICES

Select DAB1 or DAB2. In each band, the active station will be the last one used. To select another station, press the appropriate preset button (0 to 9).

Any preset can be used to store any Digital Radio service, from any ensemble. If you switch between presets which are on different ensembles, the tuning time can take a few seconds (the word '**Searching….**' briefly appears on the screen). Switching between services within the same ensemble is virtually immediate.

If there is no service stored on a pre-set, or if the service is not receivable at the current location, the message '**No Reception**' will be displayed.

If the service you want is not already stored in a preset button or cannot be received, then you can step through the other services in the current ensemble by repeated short presses on the steering wheel buttons (**20** or **21**) or the seek-up or Seek-down buttons (**9** or **11**). At the end of the ensemble, a further press will show '**Searching….**' for a few seconds and then the next ensemble will be shown. You can then step through each service in this new ensemble by repeated short presses as above.

To store a service on a preset: While playing the desired service, press and hold the desired preset button. A bar-graph will show, indicating how long you need to hold the button, followed by a 'Preset Stored' pop-up message. Now release the button.

DAB SERVICE LIST

A quick way to see all the services available on the presets and all the other services which may be received in the current ensemble is to use the left navigation button (**10**) to go to the waveband list, select either DAB1 or DAB2, then the right navigation button to list the presets of DAB1 or DAB2. If the desired station is not listed, there is a **Service List** option at the top of the list. Scroll up to the **Service List** item and press the right navigation button to see all the services of the current ensemble listed. Use the navigation up/down buttons to scroll up and down the list. If you want to select a service, scroll the outline box onto the desired service and press **OK**.

DAB MANUAL TUNING

Press and hold the seek-up or seek-down buttons (**9** or **11**) or steering wheel buttons (**20** or **21**) for approximately 3 seconds to enter **Manual Tuning**. The **Manual Tuning** pop-up will appear on the display. Using the seek-up or seek-down buttons (**9** or **11**) or steering wheel buttons (**20** or **21**) you can then move through all the services and ensembles in turn.

If an ensemble is empty or not receivable then the tuning will move along to the next. If an ensemble is only just strong enough to receive but the services are too weak to use, the tuning may stop on that ensemble and display the ensemble's name, and possibly the service's name, but without sound. If no sound is heard within 5 to 10 seconds then press the appropriate seek button again to move onto the next useable ensemble.

To select and play a service of your choice, locate it and ensure that the audio is receivable, then press **OK**.

The **Manual Tuning** mode allows up to 30 seconds of inactivity before it times out. If **Manual Tuning** times out with no new service tuned, the radio will revert to the service you were tuned to at the start of your Manual Tuning session.

SERVICELINK

ServiceLink is an item on the Menu (**12**) and can be enabled or disabled using the **OK** button.

When ServiceLink is enabled, two additional features come in to operation:

- If you are listening to a local service which has a partner service in an adjacent area, when the signal weakens it will automatically change over to the new area's partner service.
- If you have selected a digital service which has an equivalent FM service in the area and your digital service has deteriorated, then the radio will automatically switch to the alternative FM service until the digital reception becomes adequate again.

We advise that ServiceLink is switched off when searching for ensembles or using Manual Tuning.

DAB DISPLAYED MESSAGES

'**Searching….**' is displayed when the radio is tuning itself to the correct ensemble. You will see this for a few seconds during some preset changes, and when seeking up or down to another ensemble.

If ServiceLink is enabled and no alternative signal can be found, 'Searching....' may show for a long period of time since in this mode the radio will continue to search round all the bands automatically until you command it to go to a different service or switch off ServiceLink.

'**No Reception**' is displayed when ServiceLink is not enabled and you have selected a service which cannot be received in the vehicle's current position. Select an alternative service, or search for an alternative ensemble.

'**Serv00**', '**Serv01**' etc. may be shown when the radio can detect signals from an ensemble but cannot decode the service names. These are default labels to replace the non-receivable service names. In these cases the audio is generally impossible to receive from the vehicle's current location. Select an alternative service, or search for an alternative ensemble.

CD PLAYER

Do not use discs with paper labels, dual discs or DVDPlus discs. The front loading CD player may load and play this type of disc, however it is likely that the disc will not eject and will block the CD mechanism. Such damage to a CD player will not be covered under warranty.

Do not force the disc into the slot.

Note: *Copy-protected CDs may fail to play in your CD changer or may be played subject to various limitations (e.g. sound quality may be impaired). If you experience a problem, try the CD in other players before contacting the CD vendor.*

LOADING A COMPACT DISC

Gently place a CD into the loading slot, the disc will be drawn into the player and loaded.

Press the CD button on the fascia to select CD playback mode.

If a CD is already loaded, playback will resume from the point of last play.

TRACK SELECTION

When playing a CD, the display will show the current track being played, the total number of tracks on the CD and the time elapsed since the current track began to play.

You can move to the previous or next track by briefly pressing the backwards or forwards seek buttons on either the audio unit or steering wheel.

Pressing and holding the seek buttons will fast forward or rewind the CD.

To select a track from the CD track list:

1. Press the right side of the menu navigation control (**10**) to access the CD track list.
2. Press the up or down arrows on the menu navigation control to scroll to the required track.
3. Press the **OK** button to play the selected track.

REPEAT AND SHUFFLE

Repeat will play the current track repeatedly.

Shuffle plays the tracks in a random sequence.

To enable/disable Repeat or Shuffle when a CD is playing:

1. Press the **MENU** button (**12**).
2. Select **Audio Settings** on the screen menu.
3. Select **Repeat** or **Shuffle**.
4. Press **OK**.

PORTABLE MEDIA

Portable media devices can be connected to the media hubs located in the cubby box lid and the rear of the floor console. Compatible portable devices include:

- USB mass storage devices (e.g. a memory stick). Devices must use FAT or FAT32 file format.
- iPod® (iPod Classic, iPod Touch, iPhone™ and iPod Nano are supported - full functionality for older devices cannot be guaranteed). iPod Shuffle functionality cannot be guaranteed.

  Note: *iPod and iPhone are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the USA and other countries.*
- Auxiliary devices (personal audio, MP3 players, all iPods).

Devices with Bluetooth® connectivity (devices must support A2DP and AVRCP Bluetooth® protocols).

When connecting a portable storage device, use the **AUX** button (**5**) button. Many of the controls are similar to those available CD play.

Please disconnect your iPod when leaving the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in the iPod battery discharging.

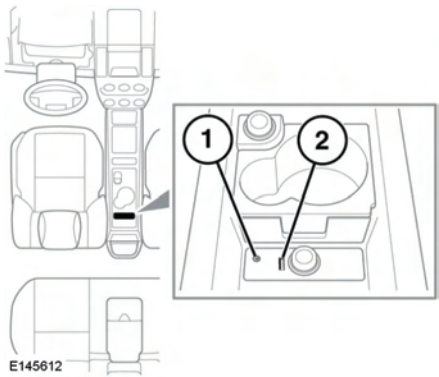
Note: *The audio system will play MP3, WMA and AAC files.*

To maximise playback quality, it is recommended that lossless compression is used for any media files on USB or iPod. Failing this, it is recommended that compressed files utilise a minimum bitrate of 192 kb/s (a higher bitrate is strongly recommended).

For media files delivered via USB or MP3 players, the highest compression rate supported, is 320 kbits per second (kbps). If anything less than 128 kbps is used, Digital Signal Processing (DSP) functionality may be lost.

Note: *Some MP3 players have their own file system that is not supported by this system. To use your MP3 player, you must set it to USB Removable Device or Mass Storage Device mode. Only music that has been added to the device in this mode can be played.*

CONNECTING A DEVICE



1. 3.5 mm AUX socket.
2. USB sockets.

Connect the device into the appropriate socket.

Note: *Use the cable supplied with your media device to connect to the USB socket.*

When an iPod is connected, playback will continue from the point at which it was last playing, provided the iPod battery is in a good state of charge.

When a USB or Bluetooth® device is already connected when **AUX** is selected, playback will continue from the point at which it was last playing.

Please refer to the Ownership section of the Land Rover website at **www.landrover.com**, for a list of compatible devices.

The Bluetooth® equipped devices listed on landrover.com have been tested for compatibility with Land Rover vehicles. Performance will vary, based on the device's software version and battery condition. Devices are warranted by their manufacturer, not Land Rover.

Do not plug non-audio devices into the USB port.

TELEPHONE SYSTEM

Switch off your telephone in areas with a high explosion risk. This includes filling stations, fuel storage areas or chemical factories, as well as places where the air contains fuel vapour, chemicals or metal dust.

Always stow your mobile phone securely.

The functioning of cardiac pacemakers or hearing aids may be impaired when the phone is in use. Check with a doctor or manufacturer whether any such devices you or your passengers are using, are sufficiently protected against high-frequency energy.

The Health Industry Manufacturers' Association recommends that a minimum separation of 15 cm (6 in) is maintained between a wireless phone antenna and a pacemaker, to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. These recommendations are consistent with the independent research by, and recommendations of, Wireless Technology Research.

PAIRING AND DOCKING A MOBILE PHONE



Bluetooth® is the name for short-range radio frequency (RF) technology that allows electronic devices to communicate wirelessly with each other.

The Land Rover Bluetooth® system supports Bluetooth® Hands-Free Profile (HFP), Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP) and Audio Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP).

Note: *HFP and A2DP/AVRCP profiles can be connected independently, so a phone can be connected via one, while a media device can be connected via the other, at the same time.*

Before making use of the vehicle's Bluetooth® phone system, your Bluetooth® phone must be paired and connected to the vehicle system.

Note: *The process of pairing and docking your phone with the vehicle using the mobile phone will vary depending on the type of mobile phone used.*

For telephone compatibility, see **104, TELEPHONE COMPATIBILITY**.

1. Switch the ignition on and ensure that the audio system is active and that no other phone is currently docked to the vehicle's Bluetooth® system.

2. Using the mobile phone, search for Bluetooth® devices. On some phones, this is referred to as a new paired device. See your phone's operating instructions for further information.
3. When the vehicle's Bluetooth® system is discovered (named Land Rover), select this device from the list.
4. When prompted, enter the Bluetooth® PIN (Personal Identification Number) into the mobile phone. This four digit number is randomly generated by the vehicle system and will be displayed on the screen.
5. Once your phone is paired and docked to the system, it can dock automatically. If it does not automatically dock, you will have to dock manually with the Land Rover Bluetooth system, via the mobile phone. Please consult the mobile phone's instructions for further information.

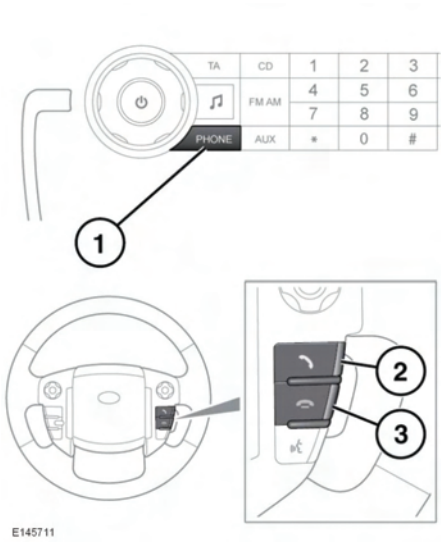
Note: *Some mobile phones do not automatically dock and will require to be manually docked.*

Some mobile phones require you to authorise the connection each time you start the system. To change this, you must set Land Rover as being authorised in the mobile phone's known device list. Please consult the mobile phone's instructions for further information.

OPERATING THE PHONE

Each time the ignition is switched on the system will attempt to connect with the last connected phone.

As mobile phones have a wide range of audio and echo characteristics, it may take a few seconds for the vehicle system to adapt and deliver optimum audio performance. To achieve this, it may be necessary to reduce the in-vehicle volume and ventilation fan speed slightly. The same then applies when using the hands-free system.



1. Press to activate or deactivate the telephone menu.
2. Press to answer a call or to dial a number.
3. Press to end a call or to reject an incoming call.

Answering, rejecting or ending a call:

- Press the **PHONE** button (**1**) or the steering wheel control (**2**) to answer an incoming call.
- To reject or end a call, press the **PHONE** button or the appropriate steering wheel control (**3**).

Dialling:

- With **PHONE** selected, use the numeric keypad to enter a telephone number.
- Press **OK** on the audio control panel or the steering wheel phone control (**2**) to dial the number.

Call volume:

The phone call volume is operated by the audio system's volume control.

If the audio system is in use when a phone call is active, the audio source is suppressed for the duration of the call. Parking aid warnings are not suppressed.

TIME AND DATE SETTINGS

To set/change the time and date:

1. Press the MENU button (**12**).
2. Select **Clock Settings** on the screen menu.
3. Select a clock function, make changes.
4. Once the change has been entered, press **OK**.

MP3 FILE PLAYBACK

MP3 discs have the potential to hold more music than a conventional CD, because each track can be compressed to a higher degree during recording.

The normal playing sequence on CDs with multiple folders, is to play the tracks within the top level first, then the tracks in any sub-folders.

Note: *The CD player may take a long time to load an MP3 disc if it contains a lot of tracks.*

To select a track from the MP3 track list:

1. Press the right side of the menu navigation control (**10**) to access the currently playing MP3 folder.

   If required, press the left side to access the folder list.
2. Press the up or down arrows on the menu navigation control to scroll to the required track or folder.
3. Press the **OK** button to play the selected track or open the selected folder.

MP3 REPEAT AND SHUFFLE

When an MP3 CD is playing, playback options include **Repeat** and **Shuffle**.

TYRE REPAIR KIT

If you are in any doubt regarding your ability to carry out the instructions, contact your Dealer/Approved Repairer before attempting the repair.

Some tyre damage may only be partially sealed, or may not seal at all, depending on the amount and type of damage. Any loss of tyre pressure can seriously affect vehicle safety.

Do not use the tyre repair kit if the tyre has been damaged by driving while under inflated.

Only use the tyre repair kit to seal damage located within the tyre tread area.

Do not use the tyre repair kit to seal damage to the tyre sidewall.

Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) when a repaired tyre is fitted to the vehicle.

The maximum distance that should be driven when a repaired tyre is fitted, is 200 km (125 miles).

When a repaired tyre is fitted, drive with caution and avoid sudden braking or steering manoeuvres.

Only use the tyre repair kit for the vehicle with which it was supplied.

Do not use the tyre repair kit for any other purpose than tyre repair.

Never leave the tyre repair kit unattended when in use.

Only use the tyre repair kit within the -30°C to +70°C temperature range.

Always keep children and animals at a safe distance from the tyre repair kit when in use.

Do not stand directly beside the compressor when it is operating.

Check the tyre sidewall prior to inflation. If any cracks, damage, or deformities are apparent do not inflate the tyre.

Watch the tyre sidewall during inflation. If any cracks, damage, or deformities are apparent switch off the compressor, and deflate the tyre.

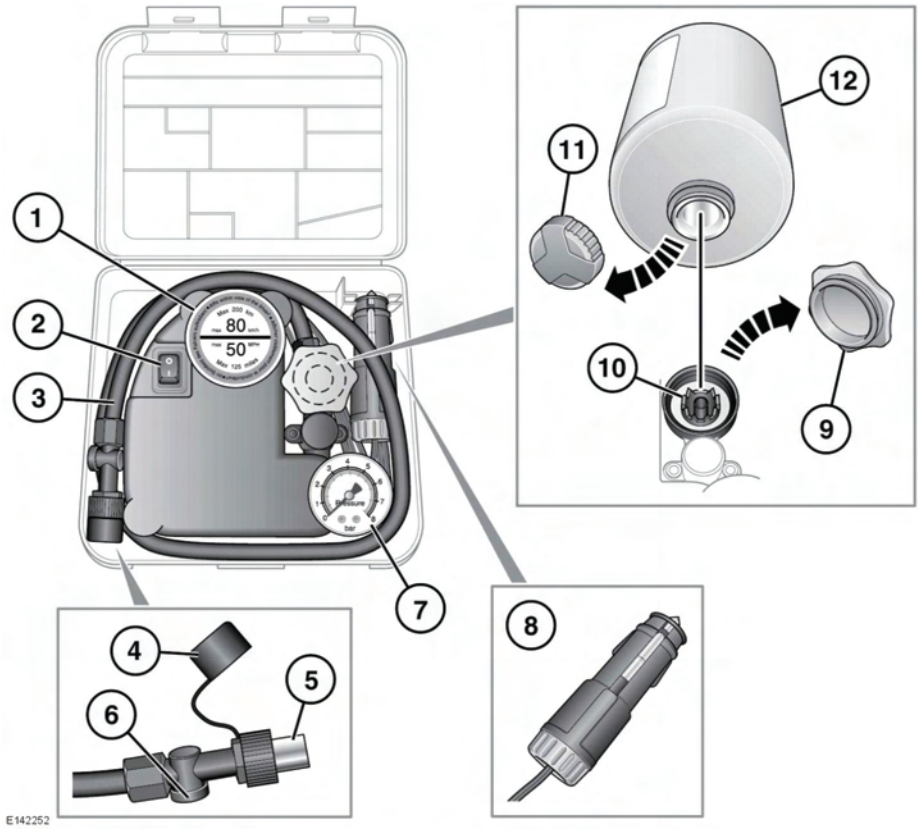
Your vehicle may not be equipped with a spare tyre. If this is the case, your vehicle will be fitted with a Land Rover tyre repair kit which can be used to repair one tyre. It is essential that you read the following guide before attempting to repair a tyre.

The tyre repair kit seals most punctures with a maximum diameter of 6 mm (1/4 inch).

The tyre repair kit is located in the rear underfloor storage compartment.

Note: *The sealant used in the tyre repair kit has a shelf life, and the expiry date is shown on the top of the bottle. Ensure that the bottle is replaced before the expiry date.*

TYRE REPAIR KIT OVERVIEW



1. Maximum speed label. 80 km/h (50 mph).
2. Compressor on/off switch. (**I** = on, **0** = off).
3. Tyre inflation hose.
4. Inflation hose protective cap.
5. Inflation hose connector.
6. Pressure release valve.
7. Tyre pressure gauge.
8. Power cable connector.
9. Sealant bottle receiver cap (orange).
10. Sealant bottle receiver.
11. Sealant bottle cap.
12. Sealant bottle.

USING THE TYRE REPAIR KIT

Avoid skin contact with the sealant which contains natural rubber latex.

Do not unscrew the sealant bottle from the receiver until it is empty, as sealant will leak out.

If the tyre inflation pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 lb/in²) within seven minutes, the tyre may have suffered excessive damage. A temporary repair will not be possible, and the vehicle should not be driven until the tyre has been replaced.

Before attempting a tyre repair, ensure that the vehicle is parked safely, as far away from passing traffic as possible.

Ensure that the parking brake is applied, and P is selected if an automatic transmission is fitted.

Do not attempt to remove foreign objects such as nails, screws, etc. from the tyre.

Always run the engine when using the compressor, unless the vehicle is in an enclosed, or poorly ventilated space.

To prevent overheating do not operate the compressor continuously for longer than ten minutes.

Note: *All vehicle drivers and occupants should be made aware that a temporary repair has been made to a tyre fitted to the vehicle. They should also be made aware of the special driving conditions imposed when using a repaired tyre.*

REPAIR PROCEDURE

Check the tyre sidewall prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tyre. Do not stand directly beside the tyre while the compressor is pumping. Watch the tyre sidewall: If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appear, turn off the compressor and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue to use the tyre.

1. Open the tyre repair kit and peel off the maximum speed label. Attach the label to the facia in the driver's field of view. Take care not to obstruct any of the instruments or warning lights.
2. Uncoil the compressor power cable and the inflation hose.
3. Unscrew the orange cap from the sealant bottle receiver, and the sealant bottle cap.
4. Screw the sealant bottle into the receiver (clockwise) until tight.
   - Screwing the bottle onto the receiver will pierce the bottle's seal.
5. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
6. Remove the protective cap from the inflation hose, and connect the inflation hose to the tyre valve. Ensure that the hose is screwed on firmly.
7. Ensure that the compressor switch is in the off (**O**) position.
8. Insert the power cable connector into an auxiliary power socket.
9. Unless the vehicle is in an enclosed area, start the engine.
10. Set the compressor switch to the on (**I**) position.

11. Inflate the tyre to a minimum of 1.8 bar (26 lbf/in²) and a maximum of 3.5 bar (51 lbf/in²).
    - When pumping the sealant through the tyre valve, the pressure may rise up to 6 bar (87 lbf/in²). The pressure will drop again after approximately 30 seconds.
12. During the inflation, switch the compressor off briefly to check the tyre pressure using the gauge mounted on the compressor.
    - It should not take longer than seven minutes to inflate the tyre. If after seven minutes the tyre has not reached the minimum pressure, the tyre should not be used.
13. Once the tyre has been inflated, switch off the compressor. If desired, the engine may be turned off after the compressor has been turned off.
14. Remove the power connector from the auxiliary power socket.
15. Remove the inflation hose from the tyre valve by unscrewing it as quickly as possible (anticlockwise).
16. Replace the inflation hose protective cap, and the tyre valve cap.
17. Do not remove the sealant bottle from the receiver.
18. Ensure that the tyre repair kit (including the bottle, and receiver caps) are placed securely in the vehicle. You will need to use the kit to check the tyre pressure after 3 km (2 miles) so ensure they are easily accessible.
19. Immediately drive the vehicle for 3 km (2 miles) to allow the sealant to coat the inner surface of the tyre and form a seal at the puncture.

CHECKING THE TYRE PRESSURE AFTER A REPAIR

When driving the vehicle, if you experience vibrations, abnormal steering, or noises, reduce speed immediately. Drive with extreme caution and reduced speed to the first safe place to stop the vehicle. Visually examine the tyre, and check its pressure. If there are any signs of damage or deformity to the tyre, or the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar (19 lbf/in²), do not continue driving.

Consult a tyre repair centre, or your Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice concerning the replacement of a tyre after using a tyre repair kit.

1. Drive the vehicle for 3 km (2 miles) then stop in a safe place. Carry out a visual examination of the tyre's condition.
2. Remove the protective cap from the inflation hose.
3. Screw the inflation hose connector firmly onto the tyre valve.
4. Read the tyre pressure from the gauge.
5. If the pressure of the sealant filled tyre is above 1.3 bar (19 lbf/in²) adjust the pressure to the correct value.
6. Ensure that the compressor switch is in the off position (**O**), and insert the power cable connector into an auxiliary power socket.
7. If the vehicle is in a well ventilated area, start the engine.
8. Switch on the compressor (**I**), and inflate the tyre to the correct pressure.
9. To check the tyre pressure turn off the compressor then read the pressure from the gauge.

10. When the compressor is off, if the tyre pressure is too high, release the required amount of pressure using the pressure relief valve.
11. Once the tyre is inflated to the correct pressure, switch off the compressor and remove the power plug from the auxiliary socket.
12. Unscrew the inflation hose connector from the tyre valve, replace the tyre valve cap and the inflation hose connector protective cap.
13. Do not remove the sealant bottle from the receiver.
14. Ensure that the tyre repair kit (including the bottle, and receiver caps) are placed securely in the vehicle.
15. Drive to the nearest tyre repair centre, or Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer, for a replacement tyre to be fitted. Ensure that you make the repair centre aware that the tyre repair kit has been used before the tyre is removed.
16. Both the tyre inflation hose, and the sealant bottle should be replaced once a new tyre has been fitted.



Only sealant bottles which are completely empty should be disposed of with normal household waste. Sealant bottles which contain some sealant, and the tyre inflation hose, should be disposed of by a tyre specialist, or your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer, in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

Avoid exposing the fuel gasses to any potential sources of ignition as the resulting fire and explosion may cause serious injuries and/or death.

Switch off the engine when refuelling, as it is both a source of extreme temperatures, and electrical sparks.

Switch off any personal electronic devices such as mobile phones or music players.

Do not operate the auxiliary heater when refuelling the vehicle. Doing so may cause fuel vapours to combust causing a fire/explosion.

Do not operate the auxiliary heater whilst the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Doing so can cause a build up of highly toxic fumes which may cause unconsciousness or death.

PETROL ENGINED VEHICLES

Do not use leaded fuels, lead substitutes, or fuel additives.

Fuel system cleaning agents should not be used, unless approved by Land Rover.

OCTANE RATING

The minimum octane rating for fuel used is 95 RON. The vehicle will run on lower ratings, but it may cause pronounced engine knock or pinking. If the pinking is severe it can cause damage to the engine, fuel and emission control systems.

Note: *Occasional, light, engine knock experienced while accelerating or climbing hills is acceptable.*

Super Green Plus 98 RON unleaded fuel (where available) may be used as an alternative to the standard 95 RON unleaded fuel.

Some countries have only 91 RON fuel available. Vehicles sold in these countries are specially calibrated to use this fuel.

ETHANOL

This vehicle is not suitable for use with fuels containing more than 10% ethanol.

Do not use E85 fuels (85% ethanol content). Equipment necessary for the use of fuels containing more than 10% ethanol is not fitted to this vehicle. If E85 fuels are used, serious engine and fuel system damage will occur.

Fuels containing up to 10% ethanol (grain alcohol) may be used. Ensure that the fuel has octane ratings no lower than those recommended for unleaded fuel. Most drivers will not notice any operating difference with fuel containing ethanol. If a difference is detected, the use of conventional unleaded fuel should be resumed.

METHANOL

Wherever possible avoid using fuel containing methanol.

Some fuels contain methanol (Methyl or wood alcohol). If you use fuels containing methanol the fuels must also contain co-solvents and corrosion inhibitors for methanol. Also, do not use fuels which contain more than 3% methanol even if they contain co-solvents and corrosion inhibitors. Fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems resulting from the use of such fuels is not the responsibility of Land Rover, and may not be covered under the warranty.

METHYL TERTIARY BUTYL ETHER (MTBE)

Unleaded fuel containing an oxygenate known as MTBE can be used provided that the ratio of MTBE to conventional fuel does not exceed 15%. MTBE is an Ether based compound derived from Petroleum, which has been specified by several refiners as the substance to enhance the Octane rating of fuel.

REFORMULATED GASOLINE

Several petroleum companies have announced the availability of reformulated fuels. These fuels are specially formulated to further reduce vehicle emissions. Land Rover fully supports all efforts to protect and maintain ambient air quality, and encourages the use of reformulated gasoline where available.

DIESEL ENGINED VEHICLES

Land Rover recommends that only premium brand diesel fuels are used.

Note: *Land Rover vehicles are capable of running with up to a 7% blend of bio-diesel in accordance with European Standard EN590.*

SULPHUR CONTENT

If your vehicle is fitted with a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) the maximum Sulphur content must not exceed 0.005%. Using an incorrect fuel will cause serious damage to the DPF.

The Sulphur content of diesel used in Land Rover vehicles should not exceed 0.3% (3000 parts per million).

In some countries diesel will contain higher levels of Sulphur, which will require reduced service intervals to reduce the effects on engine components. If in doubt contact a local Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

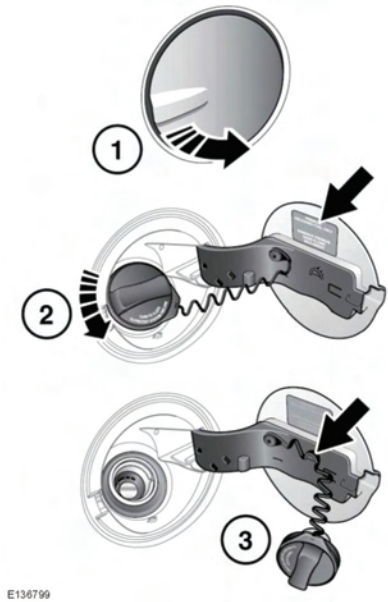
Avoid running out of fuel. Doing so can cause damage to the vehicle's engine, fuel, and emission control systems.

If the vehicle does run out of fuel, a minimum of 4 litres (0.8 gallons) will be required to restart the engine. The vehicle will need to be driven 1.6-5 km (1-3 miles) in order to reset the engine management and monitoring systems.

Note: *If the vehicle does run out of fuel, seeking qualified assistance is advisable.*

FUEL FILLER FLAP

Take note of all warnings and instructions given on the label affixed to the inside of the filler flap.



The fuel filler flap is located on the right-hand side of the vehicle, at the rear.

1. Ensure that the vehicle is fully unlocked, and press the left side of the flap to open.
2. Open the flap fully and twist the cap anticlockwise to undo.
3. Use the retaining clip to keep the filler cap out of the way whilst fuelling.

FUEL FILLER

When refuelling ensure that all windows, doors, and sunroof are fully closed, particularly if young children or animals are in the vehicle.

Do not attempt to fill the tank to its maximum capacity. If the vehicle is to be parked on a slope, in direct sunlight, or high ambient temperature, expansion of the fuel could cause spillage.

Do not operate the auxiliary heater when refuelling the vehicle. Doing so may cause fuel vapours to combust causing a fire/explosion.

Check the fuel pump information carefully, to ensure that you are putting the correct fuel into the vehicle.

If the vehicle is filled with incorrect fuel it is essential that you seek qualified assistance before you start the engine.

Filling station pumps are equipped with automatic cut-off sensing to avoid fuel spillage. Fill the tank until the filler nozzle automatically cuts-off the supply. Do not attempt to fill the tank beyond this point.

Note: *Filling station pumps used for diesel commercial vehicles deliver fuel at a higher rate than normal. The higher fill rate can cause premature cut-off and may cause fuel spillage. Therefore, it is recommended that only standard light vehicle pumps are used.*

DIESEL MISFUELLING PROTECTION DEVICE

When the misfuelling device is activated, it may cause fuel to be discharged from the filler neck.

Note: *It is the driver's responsibility to fill the vehicle with the correct fuel. The diesel misfuel protection device only reduces the risk of filling the vehicle with the incorrect fuel.*

Diesel engine vehicles in some markets are equipped with a misfuelling protection device, incorporated into the fuel filler neck.

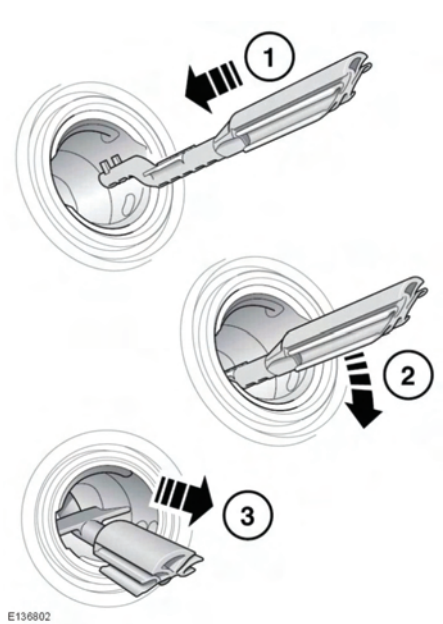
If the narrow filler nozzle fitted to pumps delivering unleaded petrol is fully inserted into the filler neck, the misfuel protection device will activate.

Note: *The diesel misfuelling protection device may not activate if an unleaded petrol nozzle is only partially inserted.*

Note: *The filler spout on some fuel cans and older fuel pumps may trigger the misfuelling device.*

When activated, the yellow misfuel protector will be visible inside the filler neck. It will prevent fuel flow into the tank. Before fuelling can continue with the correct fuel, the device will need to be reset.

The reset tool is located in the luggage compartment.



Reset the misfuel protection device as follows:

1. Insert the reset tool (with the teeth uppermost) as far as it will go into the filler neck.
2. Locate the teeth by pushing down the top of the reset tool.
3. WIth the top of the tool pressed down and the teeth engaged, slowly pull the tool out of the filler neck to reset the device.

Do not twist the device, once the teeth have engaged.

FUEL CONSUMPTION

The fuel consumption figures shown below have been calculated using a standard testing procedure (the new EC test procedure from Directive 99/100/EC) and produced in accordance with The Passenger Car Fuel Consumption (Amendment) Order 1996.

Note: *The diesel misfuelling protection device may not activate if an unleaded petrol nozzle is only partially inserted.*

Note: *The yellow part of the protection device should no longer be visible in the filler neck.*

Return the reset tool to the luggage compartment.

FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Avoid the risk of running out of fuel and never intentionally drive the vehicle when the fuel gauge indicates that the tank is empty. When refuelling your vehicle after the fuel gauge reads empty, you may not be able to add the fuel quantity shown below, as there will be a small reserve remaining in the tank.

Total tank capacity (usable):	
Petrol engines	70 litres (15.4 gallons)
Diesel engines	68 litres (15 gallons)

FUEL SPECIFICATION

Petrol	Diesel
91-98 RON	EN 590

Diesel vehicles in Algeria, Egypt, Libya, Morocco, India, Pakistan and Tunisia must only use premium diesel fuel.

Under normal use, a vehicle's actual fuel consumption figures may differ from those achieved through the test procedure, depending on driving technique, road and traffic conditions, environmental factors, vehicle load and condition.

Variant 4 Wheel Drive	Urban l/100 km (mpg)	Extra-urban l/100 km (mpg)	Combined l/100 km (mpg)	CO2 emissions g/km
Diesel (manual)	7.4 (38.2)	5.6 (50.4)	6.2 (45.6)	165
Diesel (automatic)	8.7 (32.5)	5.8 (48.7)	7.0 (40.4)	185
Petrol	13.5 (20.9)	7.5 (37.7)	9.6 (29.4)	224
2 Wheel Drive				
Diesel (manual)	7.1 (39.8)	5.4 (52.3)	6.0 (47.1)	158

URBAN CYCLE

The urban test cycle is carried out from a cold start and consists of a series of accelerations, decelerations and periods of steady speed driving and engine idling. The maximum speed attained during the test is 50 km/h (30 mph) with an average speed of 19 km/h (12 mph).

EXTRA-URBAN CYCLE

The extra-urban test cycle is carried out immediately after the urban test. Approximately half of the test comprises steady speed driving, while the remainder consists of a series of accelerations, decelerations and engine idling. The maximum test speed is 120 km/h (75 mph) and the average speed 63 km/h (39 mph). The test is carried out over a distance of 7 km (4.3 miles).

COMBINED

The combined figure is an average of the urban and extra-urban test cycle results, which has been weighted to take account of the different distances covered during the two tests.

For additional information on fuel consumption figures and exhaust emissions, visit the Vehicle Certification Agency (VCA) website at **http://www.vcacarfueldata.org.uk/**.

AIR BAG SYSTEM

The components that make up the air bag system are sensitive to electrical or physical interference, either of which could easily damage the system and cause inadvertent operation or a malfunction of the air bag module.

To prevent malfunction of the air bag system always consult your Land Rover Retailer/Authorized Repairer before fitting any of the following:

- Electronic equipment such as a cell phone, two-way radio or audio system.
- Accessories attached to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification involving the removal or repair of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any of the air bag system components, including the steering wheel, steering column, instrument or facia panels.
- Any modification to the facia panels or steering wheel.

ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

No modifications or additions should be made to the anti-theft system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction.

SERVICE INTERVAL INDICATOR

An upcoming service interval will be notified to the driver via the message centre, as either a distance or time left until service is due. Once the distance or time are exceeded, the display will show a negative value (-) to indicate that a service is overdue.

One or both types of service interval (distance and time) may be displayed.

OWNER MAINTENANCE

Any significant or sudden drop in fluid levels, or uneven tyre wear, should be reported to a qualified technician without delay.

In addition to the routine maintenance, a number of simple checks must be carried out more frequently.

DAILY CHECKS

- Operation of lamps, horn, direction indicators, wipers, washers and warning lamps.
- Operation of seat belts and brakes.
- Look for fluid deposits underneath the vehicle that might indicate a leak.

WEEKLY CHECKS

- Engine oil level.
- Engine coolant check.
- Brake/clutch fluid level.
- Power steering fluid level.
- Screen washer fluid level.
- Tyre pressures and condition.
- Operate air conditioning.

Note: *The engine oil level should be checked more frequently if the vehicle is driven for prolonged periods at high speeds.*

ARDUOUS DRIVING CONDITIONS

When a vehicle is operated in extremely arduous conditions, more frequent attention must be paid to servicing requirements.

Arduous driving conditions include:

- Driving in dusty and/or sandy conditions.
- Driving on rough and/or muddy roads and/or wading.
- Driving in extremely hot conditions.

- Towing a trailer or driving in mountainous conditions.

Contact a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF)

Diesel vehicles equipped with a particle filter have more efficient emission control. The particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the filter during normal driving.

When a DPF message is displayed, accompanied by an amber warning lamp, the filter requires a regeneration cycle to clean itself. This requires the engine to have reached normal operating temperature. Regeneration takes place automatically at an interval of approximately 300-900 km (190-560 miles) depending on driving conditions. Regeneration normally takes 10-20 minutes and is automatically requested by the engine control module if the vehicle is driven steadily at vehicle speeds between 60 km/h to 112 km/h (40 mph to 70 mph). It is possible that the regeneration process will occur at lower vehicle speeds, but the events may take a little longer at a 50 km/h (30 mph) average speed.

Note: *If regeneration is not successfully carried out, the amber warning lamp will eventually be replaced by a red warning lamp.*

If a DPF message is displayed, accompanied by a red warning lamp, contact a Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

DRIVING SHORT DISTANCES OR IN COLD WEATHER

If the vehicle is frequently driven short distances or in cold weather conditions then the engine may not reach normal operating temperature. This means that regeneration of the diesel particle filter does not take place and the filter is not efficiently cleaned. When the filter reaches a condition when a filter regeneration is appropriate and the current drive style is not appropriate, a warning triangle on the instrument panel illuminates and the message **DPF Full. See manual** is displayed in the Message centre. This is not indicating a fault condition with the vehicle and no dealership support should be required. Start regeneration of the filter by driving the vehicle, preferably on a main road or motorway. The vehicle should then be driven for approximately 20 minutes or more.

When regeneration is complete the warning text is cleared automatically.

Note: *A small increase in fuel consumption may be noticed temporarily during regeneration.*

ROAD TESTING DYNAMOMETERS (ROLLING ROADS)

It is essential that any dynamometer testing is carried out only by a qualified person, familiar with the dynamometer testing and safety procedures practised by Land Rover Dealers/ Authorised Repairers.

SAFETY IN THE GARAGE

If the vehicle has been driven recently, do not touch the engine, exhaust and cooling system components until the engine has cooled.

Never leave the engine running in an unventilated area - exhaust gases are poisonous and extremely dangerous.

WARNING - THAT NO PERSON SHOULD PLACE ANY PORTION OF THEIR BODY UNDER A VEHICLE THAT IS SUPPORTED BY A JACK.

Keep your hands and clothing away from drive belts, pulleys and fans. Some fans may continue to operate after the engine has stopped.

Remove metal wrist bands and jewellery, before working in the engine compartment.

Do not touch electrical leads or components while the engine is running, or with the starter switch turned on.

Do not allow tools or metal parts of the vehicle to make contact with the battery leads or terminals.

FUEL SYSTEM

Under no circumstances should any part of the fuel system be dismantled or replaced by anyone other than a suitably qualified vehicle technician.

Ensure sparks and naked lights are kept away from the engine compartment.

Wear protective clothing, including, where practicable, gloves made from an impervious material.

POISONOUS FLUIDS

Fluids used in motor vehicles are poisonous and should not be consumed or brought into contact with open wounds.

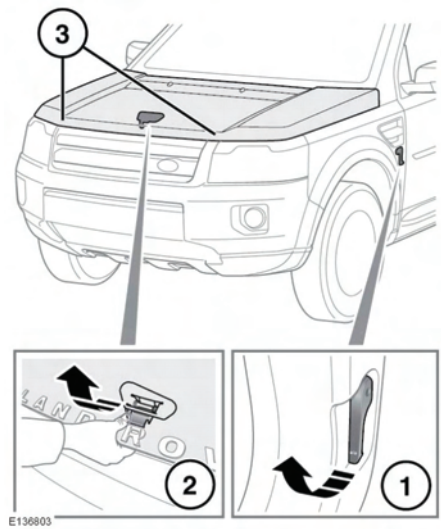
For your own safety, always read and obey all instructions printed on labels and containers.

USED ENGINE OIL

Prolonged contact with engine oil may cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer of the skin. Always wash thoroughly after contact.

It is illegal to pollute drains, water courses or soil. Use authorised waste disposal sites to dispose of used oil and toxic chemicals.

OPENING THE BONNET



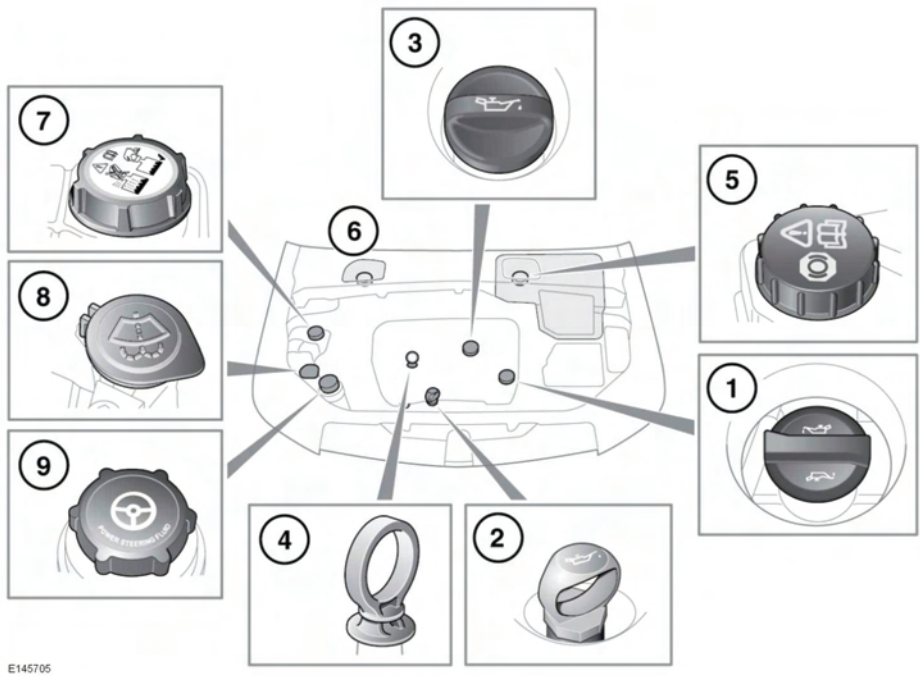
1. Pull the bonnet release lever, located in the left-hand front footwell.
2. Lift the bonnet safety catch lever, located below the centre point of the bonnet, then raise the bonnet.
3. When closing the bonnet ensure that both catches are securely latched.

CLOSING THE BONNET

Do not drive with the bonnet retained by the safety catch alone.

1. Lower the bonnet until the safety catch engages. Using both hands, press the bonnet down until the catches click.
2. Check that both catches are engaged, by trying to lift the front edge of the bonnet.

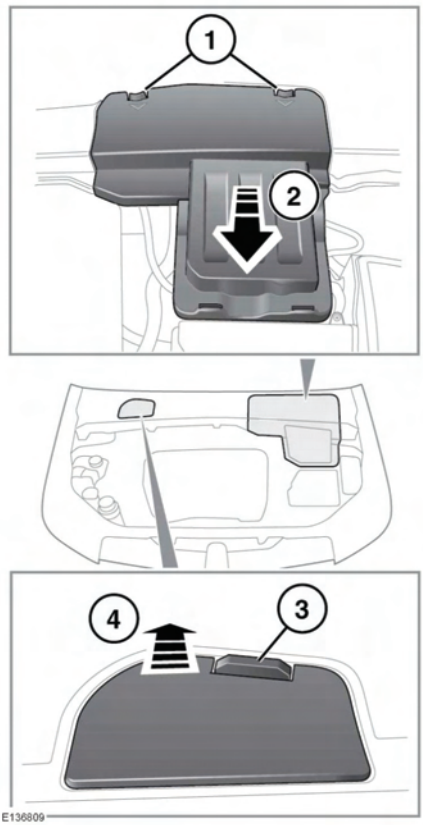
ENGINE COMPARTMENT OVERVIEW



1. Engine oil filler cap (2.2L diesel).
2. Oil level dipstick (2.2L diesel).
3. Engine oil filler cap (2.0L petrol).
4. Oil level dipstick (2.0L petrol).
5. Brake fluid reservoir cap (left-hand drive vehicles).
6. Brake fluid reservoir cap (right-hand drive vehicles).
7. Engine coolant filler cap.
8. Windscreen washer fluid filler cap.
9. Power steering fluid filler cap.

Do not drive if there is a possibility that leaked fluid will come into contact with a hot surface, such as the exhaust.

UNDER BONNET COVERS - REMOVAL



1. Press the tabs to release the cover from the casing.

   Note: *Releasing the inboard tab on the front edge of the cover first will make it easier to release the remaining tabs.*
2. Lift the front edge of the cover and slide forwards to remove.
3. Release the catch.
4. Remove the cover.

UNDER BONNET COVERS - REFITTING

Before refitting the underbonnet covers, ensure that no pipes, cables or other items, have been trapped between the cover and casing.

1. Slide the rear edge of the cover under the rubber trim fitted to the scuttle panel.
2. Make sure the front edge of the cover is flush to the casing, and then press down until the cover clicks into place.

UNBLOCKING WASHER JETS

Do not operate the washer jets during unblocking or adjustment. Windscreen washer fluid may cause irritation to the eyes and skin. Always read and observe the washer fluid manufacturer's instructions.

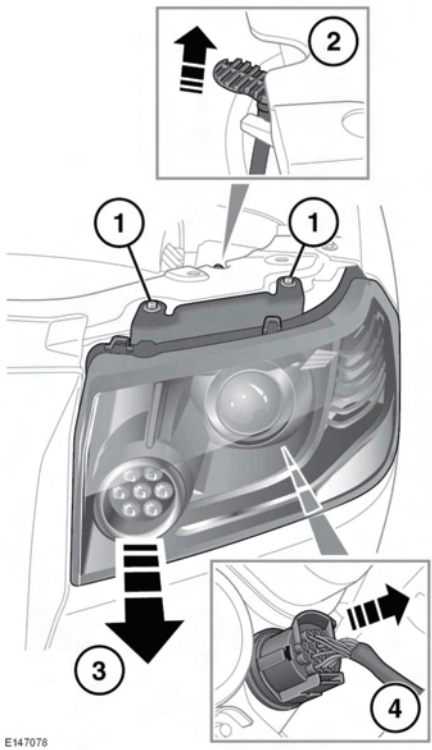
If a washer jet becomes blocked, use a thin strand of wire to unblock the jet by inserting the wire into the jet. Ensure that the wire is completely removed after unblocking. The washer jet position may also be adjusted by inserting the point of a needle into the jet and gently repositioning it.

CHANGING A BULB

Always replace bulbs with the correct type and specification. If you are in any doubt contact your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer for advice.

Note: *In certain territories it is a legal requirement to carry spare bulbs. A replacement bulb kit is available as an approved accessory from your dealer.*

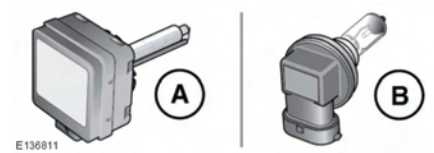
HEADLAMP REMOVAL



Do not place the removed lamp unit face down on hard or abrasive surfaces. Doing so may scratch the surface of the lens.

1. Undo and remove the two retaining bolts.
2. Pull up the locking lever to release the headlamp unit.
3. Pull the headlamp unit forward to allow access to the rear of the unit.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector from the back of the unit by pressing the tab and pulling the connector.

HEADLAMP BULB IDENTIFICATION



A. Xenon bulb.

B. Halogen bulb.

HALOGEN BULBS

Dependent on vehicle specification, halogen bulbs may be used for high beam, low beam, and front fog lamps. Take care not to touch the glass part of the bulb with your fingers; always use a cloth to handle the bulb. If necessary use methylated spirits to remove finger prints.

XENON LAMPS

Replacement or maintenance of Xenon lamps should only be carried out by suitably qualified personnel.

High voltage is required to ignite the gas and metal vapour which are used to power Xenon lamps. Contact with this voltage can cause serious injury.

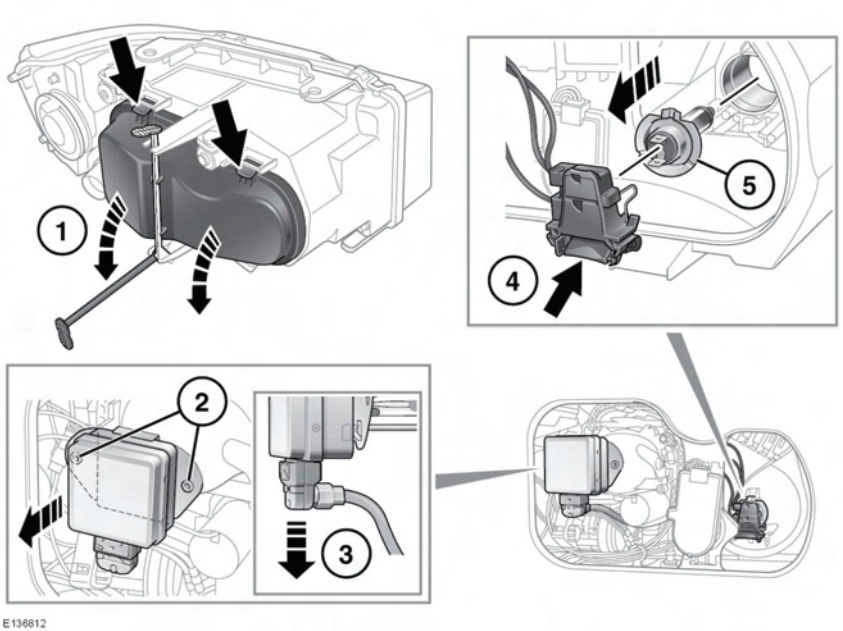
Xenon lamp units operate at a very high temperature. Ensure that the lamp units have cooled before attempting to touch them.

Xenon lamp units contain Mercury which is highly toxic and can be extremely harmful.

Seek advice about the correct disposal of Xenon lamp units from a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer, or your local authority.

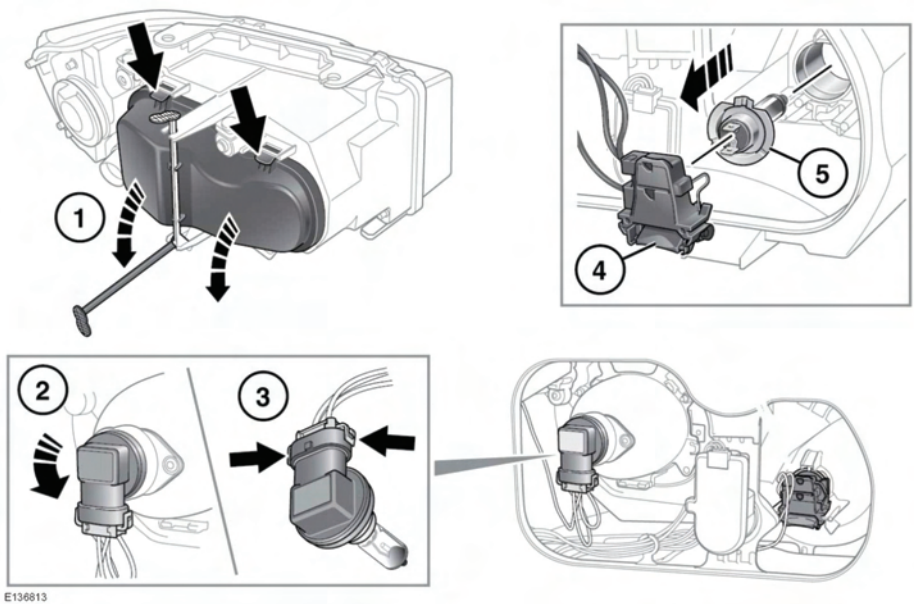
HEADLAMP BULB REPLACEMENT

Combined Xenon and Halogen



1. Unclip the locking lever, press down the two tabs and remove the cover.
2. Undo the two retaining screws and remove the Xenon unit.
3. Remove the connector from the Xenon unit.
4. Pull the connector off of the Halogen bulb.
5. Unclip the halogen bulb and remove it from the unit.

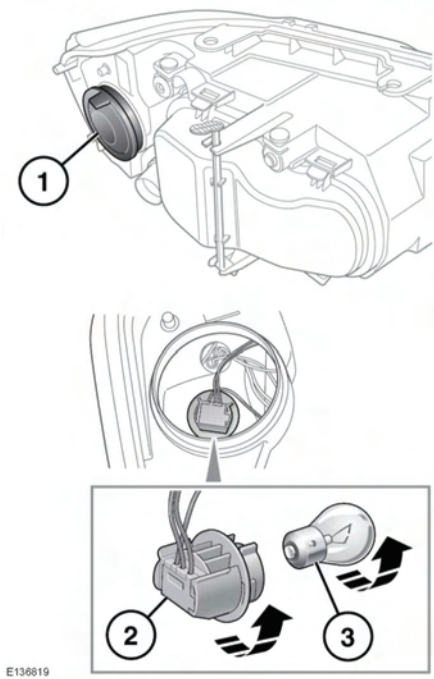
Halogen Only



1. Unclip the locking lever, press down the two tabs and remove the cover.
2. Pull the Halogen dipped beam connector off of the bulb.

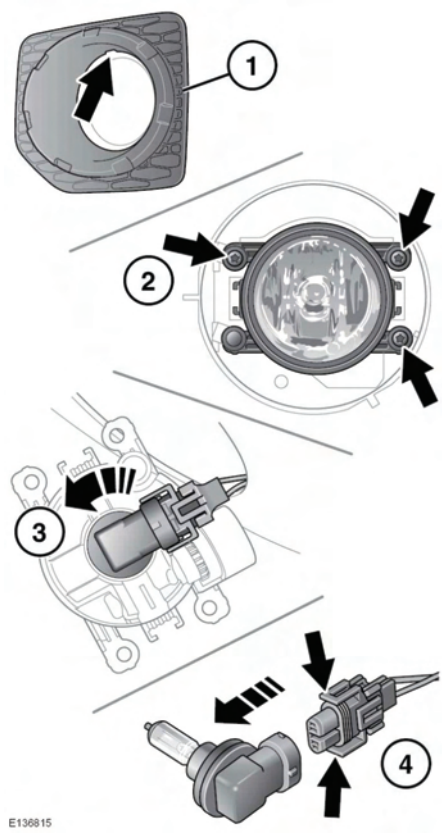
   Take care not to touch this type of bulb with your fingers; always use a cloth to handle them. If necessary, clean the bulb with methylated spirits to remove fingerprints.
3. Unclip the bulb and remove it from the unit.
4. Pull the main beam connector off of the bulb.
5. Unclip the bulb and remove it from the unit.

DIRECTION INDICATOR BULB REPLACEMENT



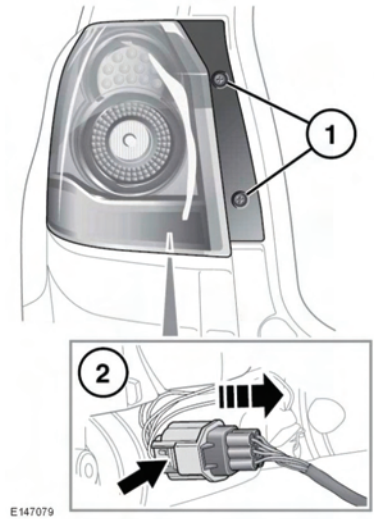
1. Remove the cover.
2. Twist the indicator bulb holder, and remove it from the lamp unit.
3. Press the bulb into the holder, then twist it and remove.

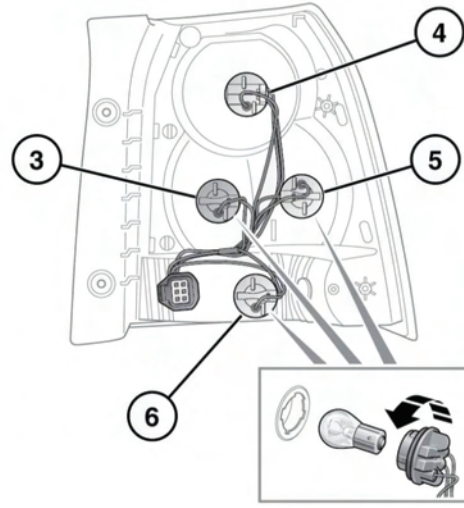
FRONT FOG LAMP BULB REPLACEMENT



1. Using the slot at the top of the lamp surround, lever out with a suitable implement to remove.
2. Undo the three retaining screws, and remove the lamp unit.
3. Rotate the bulb holder (anticlockwise) and remove from the lamp unit.
4. Press the two clips together, and remove the electrical connector.

REAR LAMP BULB REPLACEMENT



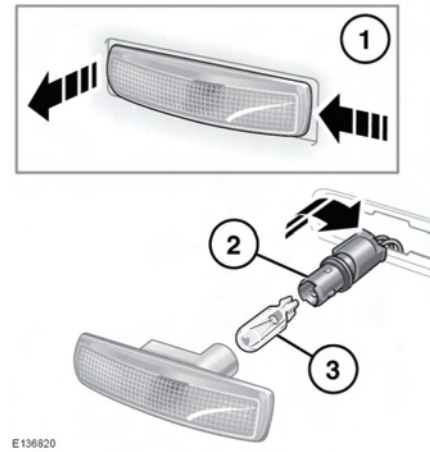


1. With the tailgate open, remove the two screws from the inner edge of the unit.
2. Pull the unit carefully away from the vehicle, disconnect the electrical connector and remove the unit from the vehicle
3. Direction indicator.
4. Stop/tail lamp.

   Note: *This is an LED lamp. Repair or replacement should only be carried out by qualified personnel.*
5. Reversing lamp
6. Rear fog lamp.

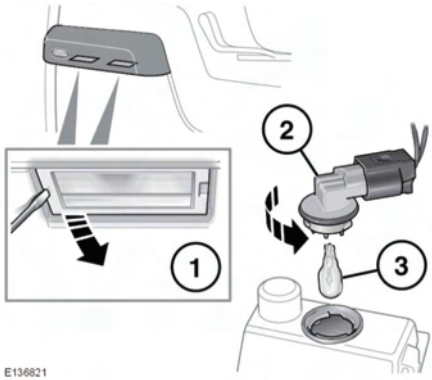
Twist the relevant bulb unit and pull to access the bulb. Push, twist and pull to remove the bulb.

SIDE REPEATER LAMP BULB REPLACEMENT



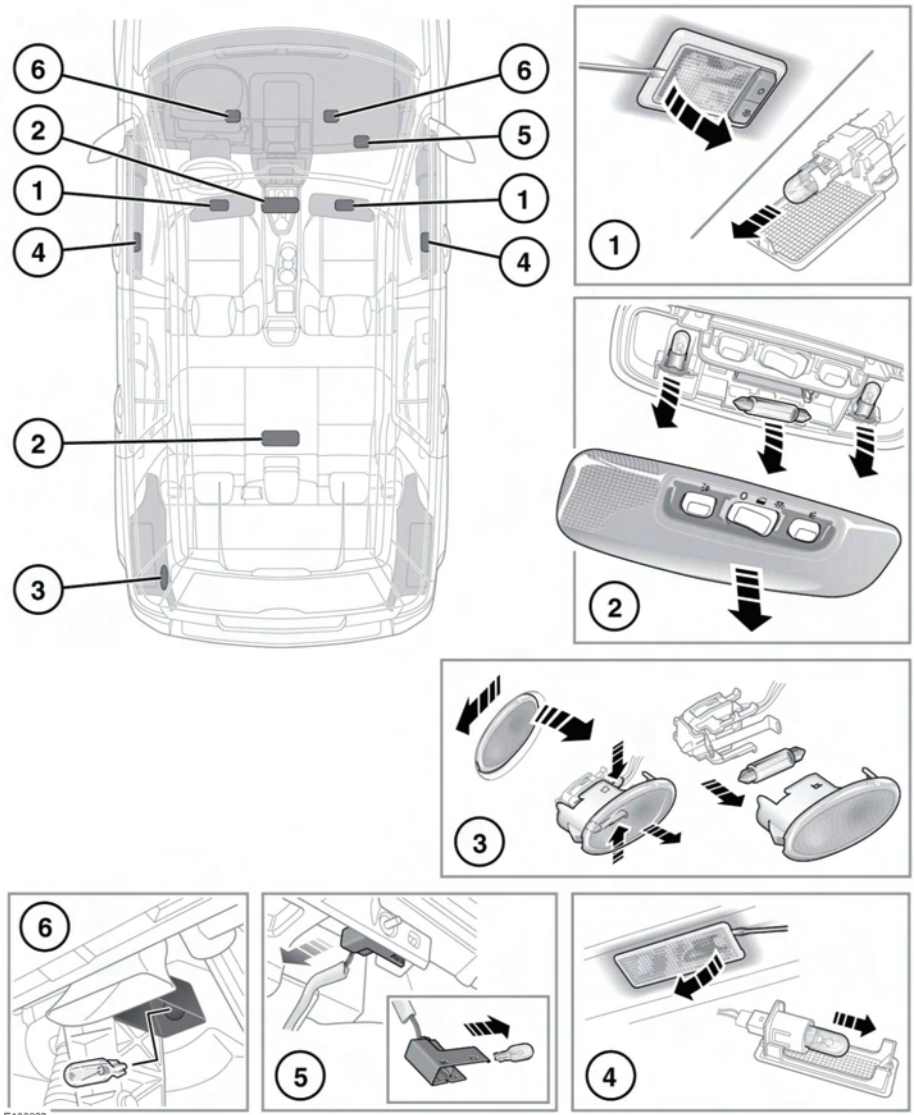
Follow the steps illustrated. Insert a new bulb and refit the components.

LICENSE PLATE LAMP BULB REPLACEMENT



Follow the steps illustrated. Insert a new bulb and refit the components.

INTERIOR LAMP BULB REPLACEMENT



Follow the steps illustrated. Insert a new bulb and refit the components.

1. Sun visor lamps.
2. Courtesy lamp and map lamps.
3. Load space lamp.

4. Puddle lamps.
5. Glove box lamp.
6. Footwell lamps.

WINDOW RESET

The windows will need to be reset if the battery is disconnected, becomes discharged or power supply is interrupted.

Reset as follows:

1. Close the window fully.
2. Release the switch, then lift it to the close position and hold for 1 second.
3. Repeat the procedure on each window.

SUNROOF RESET

If the battery is disconnected or the power supply is interrupted whilst the sunroof is partially open, it will need to be recalibrated.

Once the battery is reconnected or the power supply is restored, recalibrate the sunroof as follows:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. With the sunroof closed, press and release the front of the switch. The sunroof will move to the tilted position.
3. Press the front of the sunroof switch and hold for 20 seconds.
4. After 20 seconds, the sunroof will begin to move. Keep the front of the switch pressed until the fully open/close cycle has completed.
5. Once the sunroof has stopped moving, release the switch.

The sunroof can now be operated as normal.

PARTS AND ACCESSORIES

The fitting of non-approved parts and accessories, or the carrying out of non-approved alterations or conversions, may be dangerous and could affect the safety of the vehicle and occupants and also invalidate the terms and conditions of the vehicle warranty.

Land Rover will not accept any liability for death, personal injury or damage to property which may occur as a direct result of fitment of non-approved accessories or the carrying out of non-approved conversions to Land Rover vehicles.

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

Remove any heavy deposits of mud and dirt with a hose before washing the vehicle.

Some high pressure cleaning systems are sufficiently powerful to penetrate suspension joints, door/window seals and damage trim and door locks. Never aim the water jet directly at the engine air intake, heater air intakes, body seals (doors, sunroof, windows etc.) or at any components which may be damaged (lights, mirrors, exterior trim, suspension seals and gaiters, etc.). Make sure that the pressure washer nozzle is always at a distance of more than 12 inches (300 mm) from any component of the vehicle.

Do not use a power wash system in the engine bay area.

Following cleaning of the vehicle exterior (particularly with a pressure washer), it is recommended that the vehicle is taken for a short drive to dry out the brakes.

Substances which are corrosive, such as bird droppings, can damage the vehicle's paintwork and should be removed as soon as possible.

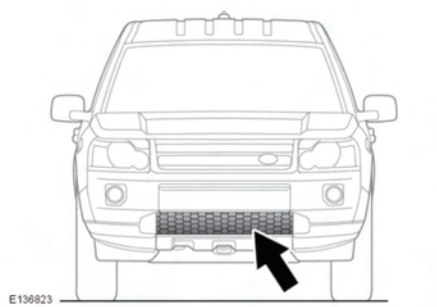
Do not apply polish to any unpainted areas of bumper mouldings. It will become ingrained in the textured finish.

UNDER BODY MAINTENANCE

Regularly flush the underbody with plain water, and pay particular attention to areas where mud and debris collect.

If damage or corrosion are detected, have the vehicle checked by a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

CLEANING AFTER OFF-ROAD DRIVING



Ensure that the areas around air intakes and the front grille are clean and clear of debris. Pay particular attention to the lower grille and radiator. Failure to do so may cause the engine to overheat, leading to severe engine damage.

Ensure that the vehicle underside is cleaned as soon as possible after driving off-road.

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

Do not polish the instrument panel. Polished surfaces are reflective, and may interfere with the drivers view.

Clean plastic or cloth faced surfaces with warm water and non-detergent soap. Then wipe clean with a soft cloth.

CLEANING LEATHER UPHOLSTERY

Only use cleaning products specifically designed for use on leather. Do not use chemical, alcohol, or abrasive materials, as they will cause rapid deterioration of the leather. The use of products which are not approved will invalidate your warranty.

If you are in any doubt as to which products to use, consult your Land Rover Dealer/Approved Repairer.

Leather should be cleaned and protected at least every six months.

To prevent ingrained dirt and staining, inspect the seat upholstery regularly and clean every 1 to 2 months as follows:

1. Wipe off fine dust from the seat surfaces using a clean, damp, non-coloured cloth. Avoid over wetting the leather.
2. If this is not sufficient, use a cloth which has been dampened with warm soapy water and then wrung out. Use only mild non-caustic soap.
3. Use Land Rover leather cleaner for heavily soiled areas. Dry off and rub the with a clean soft cloth, changing surfaces regularly.

Use Land Rover leather cleaner several times a year to maintain the leather's suppleness and appearance. The cleaner will nourish and moisturise and help to improve the surface protection film against dust and substances.

- Dark clothing may stain leather seats just like other upholstery products.
- Sharp objects such as belts, zippers, rivets etc can leave permanent scratches and scratch marks on the leather surface.
- Unless spillages such as tea, coffee or ink are washed away immediately, permanent staining may have to be accepted.

If a valet service is used, ensure that the specialist concerned is aware of, and follows, these instructions precisely.

Note: *Some materials/fabrics are prone to dye transfer, which can cause unsightly discolouration of lighter coloured leathers. Affected areas should be cleaned and re-protected as soon as possible.*

CLEANING THE SEAT BELTS

Do not allow any water, cleaning products, or fabric from cloths to enter the seat belt mechanism. Any substance which enters the mechanism may affect the performance of the seat belt in an impact.

Extend the seat belts fully, then use warm water and a non-detergent soap to clean. Allow the seat belts to dry naturally whilst fully extended.

Note: *Whilst cleaning the seat belt, take the opportunity to examine the webbing for damage/wear. Any wear or damage should be reported to, and rectified by, a Land Rover Dealer/Approved Repairer.*

AIRBAG MODULE COVERS

Airbag covers should only be cleaned using a slightly dampened cloth, and a small amount of upholstery cleaner.

Do not allow the airbag covers, or surrounding areas, to become contaminated with liquids. Any substance which enters the mechanism can prevent correct deployment of an airbag during an impact.

CLEANING THE TOUCH SCREEN

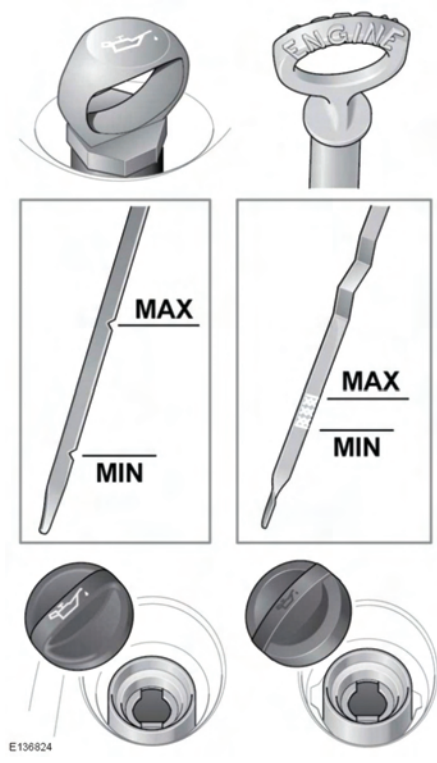
- Clean with a lightly moistened cloth.
- Do not use chemical agents or domestic cleaners.
- To prevent errors occurring, ensure that only one finger at a time is in contact with the screen.
- Do not use excessive pressure.
- Do not allow sharp, hard or abrasive objects to make contact with the screen.
- Avoid exposing the screen to direct sunlight for long periods.

CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

The oil consumption of an engine is influenced by many factors. Under high loads an engine will consume more oil than usual. Diesel engines consume slightly more oil than petrol engines.

Check the oil level weekly, when the engine is cold and with the vehicle resting on level ground.

Note: *If it is necessary to check the oil level when the engine is hot, switch off the engine and let the vehicle stand for 5 minutes to allow the oil to drain back into the sump. Do not start the engine.*



1. Withdraw the dipstick and wipe the blade clean with a lint free cloth.
2. Fully re-insert the dipstick and withdraw again to check the oil level. Never allow the oil level to fall below the lower mark or notch on the dipstick.

As a general guide, if the level on the dipstick:

- Is nearer to the upper mark or notch than the lower, add no oil.
- Is nearer to the lower mark or notch than the upper, add 0.5 litre (1 pint) of oil.
- Is below the lower mark or notch, add 1 litre (2 pints) of oil and re-check the level after a further five minutes.

TOPPING UP THE OIL

The vehicle warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by using oil that does not meet the required specification.

Failure to use an oil that meets the required specification could cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increase pollution. It could also lead to engine failure.

Overfilling with oil could result in severe engine damage. Oil should be added in small quantities and the level re-checked to ensure that the engine is not overfilled.

Note: *It is essential to use oil with the correct specifications and make sure it is suitable for the climatic conditions in which the vehicle is to be operated. See* ***162, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS****.*

1. Remove the oil filler cap.
2. Add oil to maintain the level between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks or notches on the dipstick. Clean up any oil spilled during topping-up.
3. Check the oil level again after 5 minutes.

Note: *The approximate quantity of oil required to raise the level from* **MIN** *to* **MAX** *on the dipstick is 1.2 litres (2.11 pints) - petrol models or 1.5 litres (2.64 pints) - diesel models.*

CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL

Running the engine without coolant will cause serious engine damage.

The coolant level in the expansion tank should be checked at least weekly (more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions). Always check the level when the system is cold.



Ensure the coolant level remains between the level indicator marks located on the side of the expansion tank.

If the level has dropped suddenly, or by a large amount, the system may be leaking or overheating. Arrange for the vehicle to be examined by a qualified technician as soon as possible.

TOPPING UP THE COOLANT

Never remove the filler cap when the engine is hot - escaping steam or scalding water could cause serious personal injury.

Avoid spilling antifreeze onto a hot engine - a fire may result.

Unscrew the filler cap slowly, allowing the pressure to escape before removing completely.

Antifreeze is poisonous and can be fatal if swallowed - keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental consumption is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.

If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water.

The use of non-approved antifreeze will have an adverse effect on the engine cooling system and therefore engine durability.

Antifreeze will damage painted surfaces; soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

When travelling in territories where the water supply contains salt, always ensure you carry a supply of fresh (rain or distilled) water. Topping up with salt water will cause serious engine damage.

Top-up to the upper level indicator mark located on the side of the expansion tank. See **162, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

To ensure that the anti-corrosion properties of the coolant are retained, the antifreeze content should be checked once a year and completely renewed every ten years, regardless of distance travelled. Failure to do so may cause corrosion of the radiator and engine components.

The specific gravity of a 50% antifreeze solution at 20°C (68°F) is 1.068 and protects against frost down to -40°C (-40°F).

Note: *In an emergency - and only if the approved antifreeze is unavailable - top-up the cooling system with clean water, but be aware of the resultant reduction in frost protection. Do not top-up or refill with conventional antifreeze formulations. If in doubt consult a qualified technician.*

Ensure the cap is tightened fully after top-up is complete by turning the cap until the ratchet cap clicks.

CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID LEVEL

Brake fluid is highly toxic - keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental consumption of fluid is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.

If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water.

Do not drive the vehicle with the fluid level below the MIN mark.

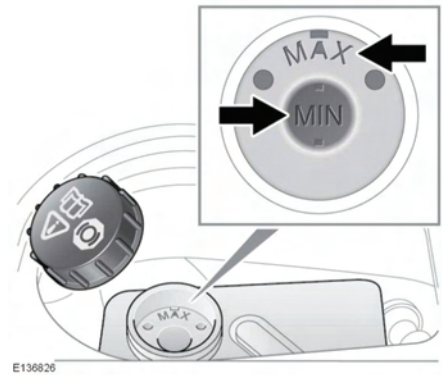
If the quantity of fluid in the brake/clutch reservoir drops below the recommended level, a red warning indicator in the instrument pack will illuminate.

Note: *If the warning indicator illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits by gently applying the brakes.*

Check and top-up the fluid level if necessary.

Seek qualified assistance immediately if brake pedal travel is unusually long or if there is any significant loss of brake fluid. Driving under such conditions could result in extended stopping distances or complete brake failure.

With the vehicle on level ground, check the fluid level at least every week (more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions).



1. Clean the filler cap before removing to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
2. Remove the filler cap.
3. The brake fluid level should be between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.

The fluid level may drop slightly during normal use as a result of brake pad wear but should not be allowed to drop below the **MIN** mark.

TOPPING UP THE BRAKE FLUID

Brake fluid will damage painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

Only use new fluid from an airtight container. Fluid from opened containers or fluid previously bled from the system will have absorbed moisture, which will adversely affect performance, and must not be used.

1. Top-up the reservoir to the **MAX** mark. See **162, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.
2. Replace the cap.
3. Fit the reservoir cover in the reverse order of removal.

CHECKING THE POWER STEERING FLUID LEVEL

Power steering fluid is highly toxic. Keep containers sealed and out of reach of children. If accidental consumption of fluid is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.

If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water.

Do not start the engine if the fluid level has dropped below the **MIN** mark. Severe damage to the steering pump could result.

Seek qualified assistance immediately if there is a noticeable drop in the fluid level. Severe damage to the steering pump could result.

If fluid loss is slow, the reservoir may be topped-up to the upper level mark to enable the vehicle to be driven to a repair facility for examination. However, it is recommended that you seek qualified assistance before driving the vehicle.

Check and top-up the fluid with the vehicle on level ground, engine switched off, and the system cold. Ensure that the steering wheel is not turned after stopping the engine.



The level of fluid can be seen through the translucent body of the reservoir.

The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.

TOPPING UP THE POWER STEERING FLUID

Power steering fluid will damage painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

Do not fill the reservoir above the **MAX** mark.

1. Clean the filler cap before removing to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
2. Remove filler cap.
3. Top-up the reservoir until the fluid level is between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks. See **162, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.
4. Replace filler cap.

CHECKING THE WASHER FLUID LEVEL

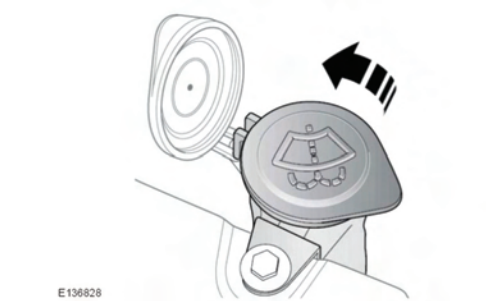
Some screen washer products are inflammable, particularly if high or undiluted concentrations are exposed to sparking. Do not allow screen washer fluid to come into contact with naked flames or sources of ignition.

If the vehicle is operated in temperatures below 4°C (40°F), use a washer fluid with frost protection. In cold weather, failure to use a washer fluid with frost protection, could result in impaired vision and increase the risk of a vehicle crash.

Do not use an antifreeze or vinegar/water solution in the washer reservoir - antifreeze will damage painted surfaces, while vinegar can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Body panels may suffer discolouration as a result of screen washer fluid spillage. Take care to avoid spillage, particularly if an undiluted or high concentration is being used. If spillage occurs, wash the affected area immediately with water.

TOPPING UP THE WASHER FLUID



The washer reservoir supplies both front and rear screen washer jets and headlamp washer jets.

Check and top-up the reservoir level at least every week. Always top-up with screen washer fluid to prevent freezing.

Operate the washer switches periodically to check that the nozzles are clear and properly directed.

1. Clean the filler cap before removing to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
2. Remove filler cap.
3. Top-up the reservoir until the fluid is visible in the filler neck.
4. Replace filler cap.

Washer reservoir capacity

- Models without headlamp wash - 3.1 litres (5.45 pints).
- Models with headlamp wash - 5.8 litres (10.2 pints).

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

	Diesel 150	Diesel 190	Petrol
Capacity	2 179 cm^3	2179 cm^3	1999 cm^3
Firing order	1-3-4-2	1-3-4-2	1-3-4-2
Compression ratio	15.8:1	15.8:1	10:1
Maximum torque	420 Nm at 1750 rpm	420 Nm at 1750 rpm	317 Nm at 3200 rpm
Number of cylinders	4	4	4
Power output	110 kW (150 PS) at 4000 rpm	140 kW (190 PS) at 3500 rpm	177W (240 PS) at 5500 rpm

LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS

Part	Variant	Specification
Engine oil	Petrol vehicles 2.0L	SAE 5W-30 meeting Ford 913-B specification.
	Diesel vehicles 2.2L (with DPF)	SAE 5W-30 meeting Ford 934-B specification.
	Diesel vehicles 2.2L (without DPF)	SAE 5W-30 meeting Ford 913-B or 913-C specification.
Main gearbox oil	Manual transmission	Castrol BOT 350 M3
Main gearbox oil	Automatic transmission	Nippon AW-1
Power Transfer unit	All vehicles	Castrol BOT 118
Haldex coupling	All vehicles	STAT OIL SL01-301
Rear differential oil	All vehicles	Castrol EPX
Power steering fluid	All vehicles	Pentosin CHF202
Brake/Clutch fluid	All vehicles	Shell DOT4 ESL. If unavailable, a low viscosity synthetic compatible DOT4 brake fluid that meets ISO 4925 class 6 and Land Rover LRES22BF03 requirements may be used.
Screen washer	All vehicles	Screen wash with frost protection
Coolant	All vehicles	1:1 mixture of Castrol SF antifreeze and water.

Land Rover recommends Castrol EDGE Professional:

CAPACITIES

Item	Variant	Capacity
Fuel tank	Diesel	68 litres (15 gallons)
	Petrol	70 litres (15.4 gallons)
Engine oil refill and filter change	Diesel	5.9 litres (10 pints)
	Petrol	5.6 litres (9.9 pints)
Manual gearbox	All vehicles	2 litres (3.5 pints)
Automatic gearbox	All vehicles	7 litres (12.3 pints)
Power Transfer unit	All vehicles	0.75 litres (1.3 pints)
Haldex coupling	All vehicles	0.65 litres (1.1pints)
Rear differential	All vehicles	0.7 litres (1.2 pints)
Washer reservoir	With headlamp wash	5.8 litres (10.2 pints)
	Without headlamp wash	3.1 litres (5.5 pints)
Cooling system (refill)	Diesel Manual	5.4 litres (9.5 pints)
	Diesel (aux heater) Manual	5.6 litres (9.9 pints)
	Diesel Auto	5.7 litres (10 pints)
	Diesel (aux heater) Auto	5.9 litres (10.4 pints)
	Petrol	4.4 litres (7.7 pints)

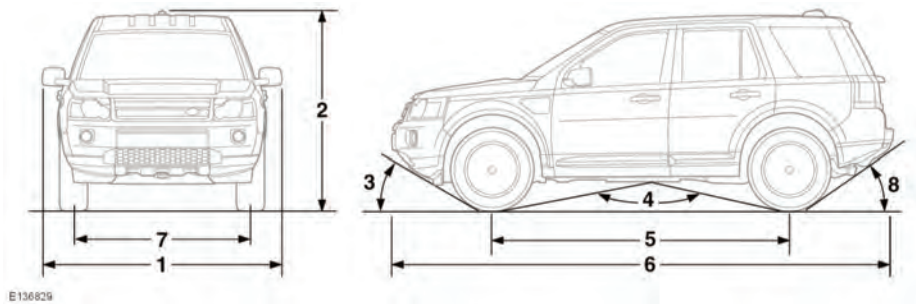
The quoted capacities are approximate and provided as a guide only. All oil levels must be checked using the dipstick, level plugs or the Instrument panel message centre, as applicable.

WEIGHTS

Variant	Vehicle weight from	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)[1]	Gross Train Weight[2]
Diesel 2.2L	1710 kg 3770 lbs	2505 kg 5520 lbs	4505 kg 9930 lbs
Petrol 2.0L	1760 kg 3880 lbs	2505 kg 5520 lbs	4505 kg 9930 lbs
[1] The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle including passengers and load.			
[2] The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle and braked trailer including their respective loads.			

Variant	Maximum front axle load[1]	Maximum rear axle load[1]	Maximum roof rack load[2]	Maximum payload
Petrol and Diesel	1310 kg 2885 lbs	1360 kg 2995 lbs	75 kg 165 lbs	500 kg 1100 lbs
[1] The front and rear axle maximum loads can not be reached simultaneously as this will exceed the GVW limit.				
[2] This figure includes the weight of the roof rack.				

DIMENSIONS



Item	Description	mm (inches)	Degrees
1	Width	2195 (86.4)	-
1	Width with mirrors folded	2005 (78.8)	-
2	Overall height	1830 (72.1)	-

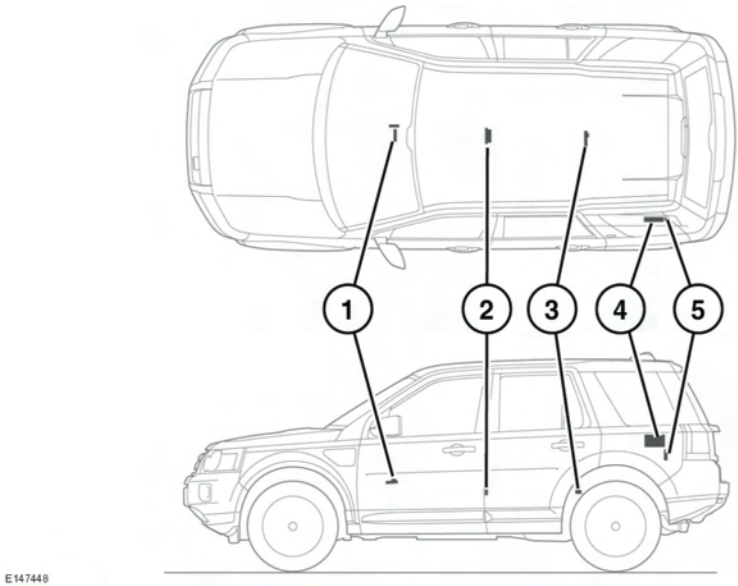
Item	Description	mm (inches)	Degrees
3	Approach angle	-	31°
3	Approach angle with body styling kit	-	23°
4	Ramp breakover angle	-	157°
5	Wheelbase	2660 (104.7)	-
6	Overall length	4500 (177.1)	-
7	Track - front	1601 (63)	-
	Track - rear	1614 (63.5)	-
8	Departure angle with body styling kit	-	29°
8	Departure angle without tow hitch	-	34°
-	Departure angle with fixed height tow hitch	-	18°
-	Maximum wading depth	500 (19.7)	-
-	Ground clearance	210 (8.3)	-
-	Turning circle (kerb to kerb)	11300 (444.9)	-

BULB SPECIFICATION

Before attempting to replace a bulb, ensure that both the affected lamp and the vehicle's ignition are turned off. If the circuit remains live, a short circuit can occur which may damage the vehicle's electrical system.

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watts)
Halogen headlamp (low and high beam)	HB3	55
Xenon headlamp (low and high beam)	D1S	35
Front direction indicators	PY21W	21
Rear direction indicators	PY21W	21
Front fog lamps	H11	55
Side repeater lamps	W5W	5
Reverse lamps	P21W	21
Rear fog lamps	P21W	21
Number plate lamps	W5W	5
Puddle lamps	W5W	5
All Interior lamps	W5W	5

REMOTE KEY FOB TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS



1. Cabin front transmitters.
2. Cabin middle transmitter.
3. Loadspace interior transmitter.
4. Keyless start module.
5. Loadspace interior transmitter.

Any implanted medical device should be kept at a distance, of at least 9 inches (22 cm) away, from any of the vehicle transmitters/receivers during their normal operation. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the vehicle system and the medical device.

WHEEL ALIGNMENT DATA

The following information relates to China.

	All models
Wheel alignment - front	12' ± 12'
Wheel alignment - rear	20' ± 12'
Camber - front left	-0.50° ± 0.75°
Camber - front right	-0.50° ± 0.75°
Camber - rear left	-1.95° ± 0.75°
Camber - rear right	-1.95° ± 0.75°
Castor - front left	3.25° ± 0.75°
Castor - front right	3.25° ± 0.75°

Note: *All figures are measured with the vehicle unoccupied, with full fluids, full tank of fuel and tyres inflated to normal pressures.*

BRAKE PEDAL TRAVEL (China)

Both the brake and clutch pedal travel is set at the factory and is non-adjustable.

BATTERY WARNING SYMBOLS



Do not allow naked flames or other sources of ignition near the battery, as the battery may emit explosive gases.



Ensure that when working near or handling the battery, suitable eye protection is worn, to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



To prevent risk of injury, do not allow children near the battery.



Be aware that the battery may emit explosive gases.



The battery contains acid which is extremely corrosive and toxic.



Consult the handbook for information, before handling the battery.

BATTERY CARE

Do not allow the battery electrolyte (fluid) come into contact with your skin or eyes. It is both corrosive and toxic, and the resulting injuries can be severe. If any electrolyte does come into contact with your skin or eyes, immediately rinse the affected area with clean, cold water. Immediate medical advice will be required.

If battery electrolyte comes into contact with your skin and/or clothes you should remove the affected clothing and flush the skin with copious amounts of water. Seek medical assistance immediately.

If battery electrolyte comes into contact with your eyes, flush with copious amounts of clean cold water. Seek medical assistance immediately, and continue to flush with water.

If swallowed, battery electrolyte can be fatal. If electrolyte is swallowed seek medical assistance immediately.

Do not connect any 12 volt equipment directly to the battery terminals. Doing so may cause a spark, which can result in an explosion.

The cell plugs and vent pipe must be in place at all times when the battery is connected to the vehicle. Ensure that the vent pipe is clear of obstructions and not kinked. Failure to do so may cause a pressure build up in the battery, resulting in an explosion.

Do not expose the battery to a naked flame or spark as the battery produces explosive, flammable gas.

Never jump start (boost) or charge, a frozen battery. Doing so can result in an explosion.

Remove all metal jewellery before working on, or near, the battery, and never allow metal objects or vehicle components to come into contact with the battery terminals. Metal objects can cause sparks, and/or short circuits, resulting in an explosion.

Do not allow the battery posts or terminals to come into contact with your skin. They contain lead, and lead compounds which are toxic. Always wash your hands thoroughly after handling the battery.

Your vehicle is fitted with a maintenance free battery.

CONNECTING JUMP LEADS

Rotating parts of the engine can cause serious injury. Take extreme care when working near rotating parts of the engine.

Before attempting to start the disabled vehicle, make sure that the parking brake is applied, or suitably chock the wheels. Make sure that Park is selected or the manual gearbox is in neutral.

Suitable eye protection must be worn when working in the area of the battery.

Do not attempt to start the disabled vehicle if it suspected that the electrolyte in the battery is frozen.

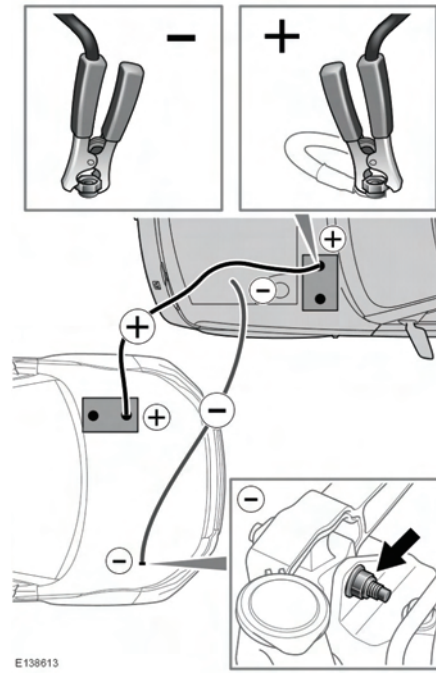
During normal use, batteries emit explosive gas sufficient to cause severe explosions and capable of causing serious injury - keep sparks and naked lights away from the engine compartment.

Make sure there is no physical contact between the donor and disabled vehicles other than the booster cables.

Make sure that the slave battery or starting aid is a 12 volt device.

Disconnect the battery cables prior to operating any electrical equipment.

Note: *Before connecting jump leads ensure that the battery connections on the disabled vehicle are correct, and that all electrical equipment has been switched off.*



Switch off all electrical equipment before following this procedure. All electrical equipment must remain switched off until the procedure is complete.

Exercise extreme caution during this procedure to avoid contact with any components in the engine compartment that are moving at high speed, carrying high voltage, or hot.

1. Connect the positive (Red) jump lead to the positive (+) terminal on the donor vehicle's battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive jump lead to the positive (+) terminal on the discharged battery.

3. Connect the negative (Black) jump lead to the recommended jump starting earth point of the donor vehicle.
4. Connect the other end of the negative jump lead to the earth point indicated.

   Note: *Check that all cables are clear of any moving components and that all four connections are secure.*
5. Start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to idle for a few minutes.
6. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

   Note: *Do not switch on any electrical circuits of the disabled vehicle until after the jump leads are removed.*
7. Allow both vehicles to idle for two minutes.
8. Switch off the donor vehicle.
9. Disconnect the negative (Black) jump lead from the previously disabled vehicle.
10. Disconnect the negative (Black) jump lead from the donor vehicle.
11. Disconnect the positive (Red) jump lead from the previously discharged battery.
12. Disconnect the positive (Red) jump lead from the donor vehicle.

CONNECTING A STARTING AID

To start the vehicle using a starting aid or a slave battery, follow the instructions in the sequence given.

1. Connect the positive (Red) jump lead to the positive (+) battery terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the negative (Black) jump lead to the vehicle earth point.
3. Start the engine and allow it to idle.
4. Disconnect the negative (Black) jump lead from the battery terminal of the vehicle.
5. Disconnect the positive (Red) jump lead from the battery terminal of the vehicle.

CHARGING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

Ensure that the correct type and rating of charger used. Using an unsuitable charger may damage the battery, and could cause the battery to explode.

Always charge the battery in a well ventilated area away from any naked flames, sparks or other ignition sources. During charging the battery can produce a highly explosive and flammable gas.

The battery must be disconnected and removed from the vehicle before charging. Failure to do so could result in damage to the vehicle's electrical system.

Always follow the instructions supplied with the battery charger. Failure to do so may result in damage to the battery.

1. Disconnect the battery and remove it from the vehicle.
2. Connect the battery charger in accordance with the charger manufacturer's instructions.
3. Once the charge is complete switch off the power to the charger.
4. Disconnect the charger cables from the battery.
5. Allow the battery to stand for an hour before connecting to the vehicle. This will allow any explosive gasses to dissipate, and reduce the risk of explosion.

REPLACING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

Switch the ignition off before disconnecting battery terminals. Always disconnect the negative terminal first and reconnect last.

Only fit a battery of the correct type and rating. Fitting an incorrect battery may result in a fire, or damage to the electrical system. If you are in any doubt when fitting a battery seek qualified assistance.

Use caution when lifting the battery out of, or into, the vehicle. It is heavy, and may cause injury when lifting, or if dropped.

Do not tip the battery when lifting or moving as tilting the battery more than 45 degrees may damage the battery, and may cause the electrolyte to leak out. Battery electrolyte is highly corrosive, and toxic.

When refitting the battery ensure that no metal objects, or vehicle components, come into contact with the battery terminals. Metal objects can cause a spark or short circuit, both of which may result in an explosion.

Ensure that when fitting a battery to the vehicle, the terminals and battery clamps are clean, and lightly coated with petroleum jelly. This will ensure good electrical connections are made, and help to prevent corrosion.

Always follow the battery manufacturers instructions. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle and/or the electrical system.

Do not rest the battery on any part of the vehicle as it may cause damage due to its weight.

Do not run the engine with the battery disconnected. Doing so may damage the charging system.

1. Ensure that all electrical circuits are switched off, all windows are closed, and the alarm is disarmed.
2. Remove the remote control from the vehicle and wait two minutes to allow the systems to power down fully.
3. Undo the negative clamp, and lift the cable and clamp clear of the battery terminal.
4. Undo the positive clamp, and lift the cable and clamp clear of the battery terminal.
5. Undo the battery clamp and lift the battery clear of the vehicle.

A new battery should be supplied with plastic terminal covers. Leave the covers in place when fitting the battery, and remove them one at a time to fit the battery cable clamps.

Refitting is an exact reversal of the removal procedure. If you are in any doubt about fitting a battery seek qualified assistance before attempting to fit the battery.

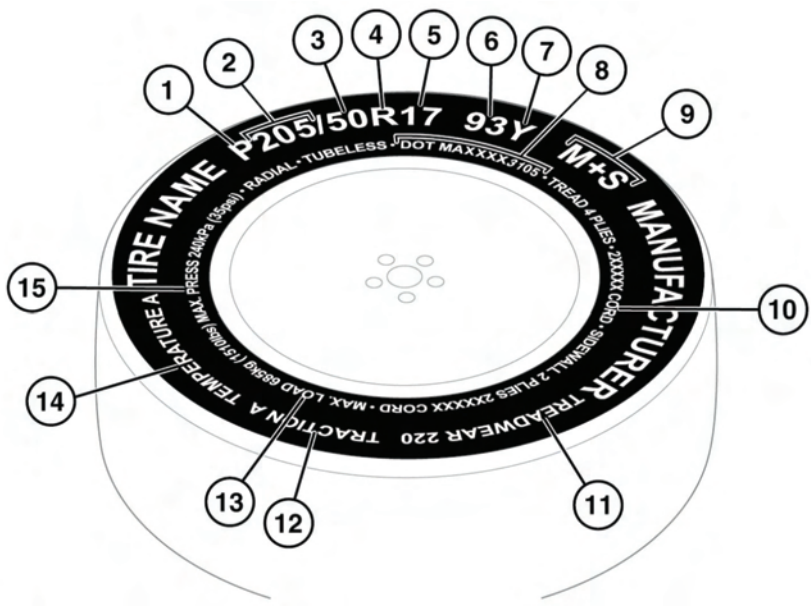


Used batteries must be disposed of correctly as they contain a number of harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from your Dealer/Authorised Repairer and/or your local authority.

EFFECTS OF DISCONNECTING

Disconnecting the battery can affect a number of vehicle systems, especially if there is insufficient battery power prior to disconnection. For example, the alarm may trigger depending on it's state when the battery was disconnected. If the alarm does sound, use the remote control in the normal way to disarm the security system. The windows may need recalibrating to operate correctly.

TYRE MARKINGS



E135318

1. **P** indicates that the tyre is for passenger vehicle use. This index is not always shown.
2. The width of the tyre from sidewall edge to sidewall edge in millimeters.
3. The aspect ratio, also known as the profile, gives the sidewall height as a percentage of the tread width. So, if the tread width is 205 mm and the aspect ratio is 50, the sidewall height will be 102 mm.
4. **R** indicates that the tyre is of Radial ply construction.
5. The diameter of the wheel rim given (in inches).
6. The load index for the tyre. This index is not always shown.

The load index on all replacement tyres should be, at least, the same specification as the original equipment. If in doubt consult a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

7. The speed rating denotes the maximum speed at which the tyre should be used for extended periods. See **173, SPEED RATING**.
8. Tyre manufacturing standard information, which can be used for tyre recalls and other checking processes. Most of this information relates to the manufacturer, place of manufacture etc. The last four numbers are the date of manufacture. For example, if the number was 5111, the tyre was made in the 51st week of 2011.

9. **M+S** or **M/S** indicates that the tyre has been designed with some capability for mud and snow.
10. The number of plies in both the tread area, and the sidewall area, indicates how many layers of rubber coated material make up the structure of the tyre. Information is also provided on the type of materials used.
11. Wear rate indicator. A tyre rated at 400 for example, will last longer than a tyre rated at 200.
12. The traction rating grades a tyres performance when stopping on a wet road surface. The higher the grade, the better the braking performance. The grades, from highest to lowest are; **AA**, **A**, **B** and **C**.
13. The maximum load which can be carried by the tyre.
14. Heat resistance grading. The tyre resistance to heat is grade **A**, **B** or **C**, with **A** indicating the greatest resistance to heat. This grading is provided for a correctly inflated tyre, which is being used within its speed and loading limits.
15. The maximum inflation pressure for the tyre. This pressure should not be used for normal driving. See **176, AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS**.

SPEED RATING

Rating	Speed km/h (mph)
Q	160 (99)
R	170 (106)
S	180 (112)
T	190 (118)
U	200 (124)
H	210 (130)
V	240 (149)
W	270 (168)
Y	300 (186)

TYRE CARE

Do not drive the vehicle if a tyre is damaged, excessively worn, or incorrectly inflated.

Avoid contaminating the tyres with vehicle fluids as they may cause damage to the tyre.

Avoid spinning the wheels. The forces released can damage the structure of the tyre, and cause it to fail.

If wheel spin is unavoidable due to a loss of traction (in deep snow for example), do not exceed the 50 km/h (30 mph) point on the speedometer.

Note: *Tyre condition should be checked after the vehicle has been used off-road. As soon as the vehicle returns to a normal, hard, road surface, stop and check for damage to the tyres.*

All of the vehicle's tyres (including the spare) should be checked regularly for damage, wear and distortion. If you are in any doubt about the condition of a tyre, have it checked immediately by a tyre repair centre or your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

TYRE PRESSURES

Never drive the vehicle if the tyre pressures are incorrect.

Pressure checks should only be carried out when the tyres are cold, and the vehicle has been stationary for more than three hours. A hot tyre at, or below, recommended cold inflation pressure, is dangerously under-inflated.

If the vehicle has been parked in strong sunlight, or used in high ambient temperatures, do not reduce the tyre pressures. Move the vehicle into the shade an allow the tyres to cool before re-checking the pressures.

All tire pressures, including the spare, should be checked on a weekly basis and before long journeys, using an accurate pressure gauge, when the tires are cold. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, resulting in a loss of vehicle control and potential personal injury.

Tyre size/speed rating	Tyre pressures. All loading conditions.	
	Front, bar (psi)	Rear, bar (psi)
235/65 R17 V	2.2 (32)	2.2 (32)
235/60 R18 V	2.2 (32)	2.2 (32)
235/55 R19 V	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)
235/55 R19 H	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)

The following procedure should be used to check and adjust the tyre pressures.

To avoid damaging the valves do not apply excessive force or side ways force on the gauge/inflator,

1. Remove the valve cap.
2. Firmly attach a tyre pressure gauge/inflator to the valve.
3. Read the tyre pressure from the gauge and add air if required.
4. If air is added to the tyre, remove the gauge and re-attach it before reading the pressure. Failure to do so may result in an inaccurate reading.
5. If the tyre pressure is too high, remove the gauge and allow air out of the tyre by pressing the centre of the valve. Refit the gauge to the valve and check the pressure.
6. Repeat the process, adding or removing air as required, until the correct tyre pressure is reached.
7. Refit the valve cap.

TYRE VALVES

Keep the valve caps screwed down firmly to prevent water or dirt entering the valve. Check the valves for leaks when checking the tyre pressures.

PUNCTURED TYRES

Do not drive the vehicle with a punctured tyre. Even if the punctured tyre has not deflated, it is unsafe to use, as the tyre may deflate suddenly at any time.

REPLACEMENT TYRES

Always fit replacement tyres of the same type, and wherever possible, of the same make and tread pattern.

The load and speed index ratings on all replacement tyres must be, at least, the same specification as the Original Equipment (OE) see . If in doubt consult your Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Do not rotate tyres around the vehicle.

If the use of tyres not recommended by Land Rover is unavoidable, ensure that you read, and fully comply with, the tyre manufacturer's instructions.

When the tread has worn down to approximately 2 mm, wear indicators start to appear at the surface of the tread pattern. This produces a continuous band of rubber across the tread as a visual reminder.

Ideally, tyres should be replaced in sets of four. If this is not possible, replace the tyres in pairs (both front or both rear). When tyres are replaced, the wheels should always be re-balanced and alignment checked.

For the correct tyre specification and pressures see **174, TYRE PRESSURES**

USING WINTER TYRES

In many countries legislation exists that requires the use of winter tyres during specified periods of the year.

M+S (mud and snow) tyres have a recognised level of winter performance and need not be replaced. The**M+S** marking on the tyre sidewall indicates an 'all season' tyre designed for use all year round, including cold temperatures, snow and ice.



This symbol identifies dedicated winter tyres, which can be fitted if optimum winter traction is required, or the vehicle is to be used in more extreme winter conditions.

Note: *Dedicated winter tyres often have a lower speed rating than the original equipment tyres, and the vehicle must therefore be driven within the speed limitation of the winter tyre.*

The tyre pressures indicated on the tyre information label are for use in all conditions on the original equipment tyres. If a reduced speed rating tyre is fitted, the recommended pressures are only suitable for use below 160 km/h (100 mph).

For optimum traction, tyres should be run in for at least 160 kilometres (100 miles) on dry roads prior to driving on snow or ice.

Land Rover approved winter tyre sizes	
17 inch wheels	235/65 R17
18 inch wheels	235/60 R18
19 inch wheels	235/55 R19

Note: ******* *Studded tyres and are market dependant. Consult a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.*

Use of dedicated winter tyres may require a change of wheel size, depending on original choice of wheel. All four wheels must be changed.

If fitted with standard rubber valves, the Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) warning lamp will flash for 75 seconds and then remain illuminated. The message centre will also display **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FAULT**.

When the original wheels and tyres are refitted, the vehicle will need to travel a short distance to reset the TPMS and extinguish the warning lamp.

PRESSURE COMPENSATION FOR TEMPERATURE CHANGES

A colder ambient local temperature will reduce pressure within the tyre. An effect is to decrease sidewall height and to increase tyre shoulder wear with the potential for tyre failure. Vehicle dynamics could also be adversely affected.

Tyre pressures can be adjusted to compensate before the start of the journey. Alternatively, tyre pressures can be adjusted when the area of lower ambient temperature is reached.

In this situation, the vehicle must be left in the ambient local temperature for at least one hour before tyre pressure is adjusted.

To compensate for colder ambient temperatures, tyre pressures should be increased by 0.14 bar (2 psi, 14 kPa) for each 10°C (20°F) decrease.

Note: *Ensure that correct tyre pressures are maintained when moving to areas of differing ambient temperature.*

Tyre pressure temperature compensation	
Ambient temperature °C (°F)	**Pressure compensation bar (psi, kPa)**
20 (68)	use label
30 (86)	+ 0.14 (2, 14)

Tyre pressure temperature compensation	
Ambient temperature °C (°F)	**Pressure compensation bar (psi, kPa)**
40 (104)	+ 0.28 (4, 28)
50 (122)	+ 0.41 (6, 41)

AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS

In order to minimise flat spotting, the tyre pressures can be increased to the maximum as stated on the tyre sidewall, for the period when the vehicle is stationary. Tyres must be returned to the specified running pressures before driving.

TYRE DEGRADATION

Tyres degrade over time due to the effects of ultraviolet light, extreme temperatures, high loads, and environmental conditions. It is recommended that tyres are replaced at least every six years, but they may require replacement more frequently.

USING SNOW CHAINS



Only use traction devices in heavy snow conditions, on compacted snow.



Never exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) when traction devices are fitted.



Never fit traction devices to a temporary use spare wheel.

Land Rover approved traction devices may be used to improve traction on compacted snow in heavy snow conditions. They should not be used in off-road conditions.

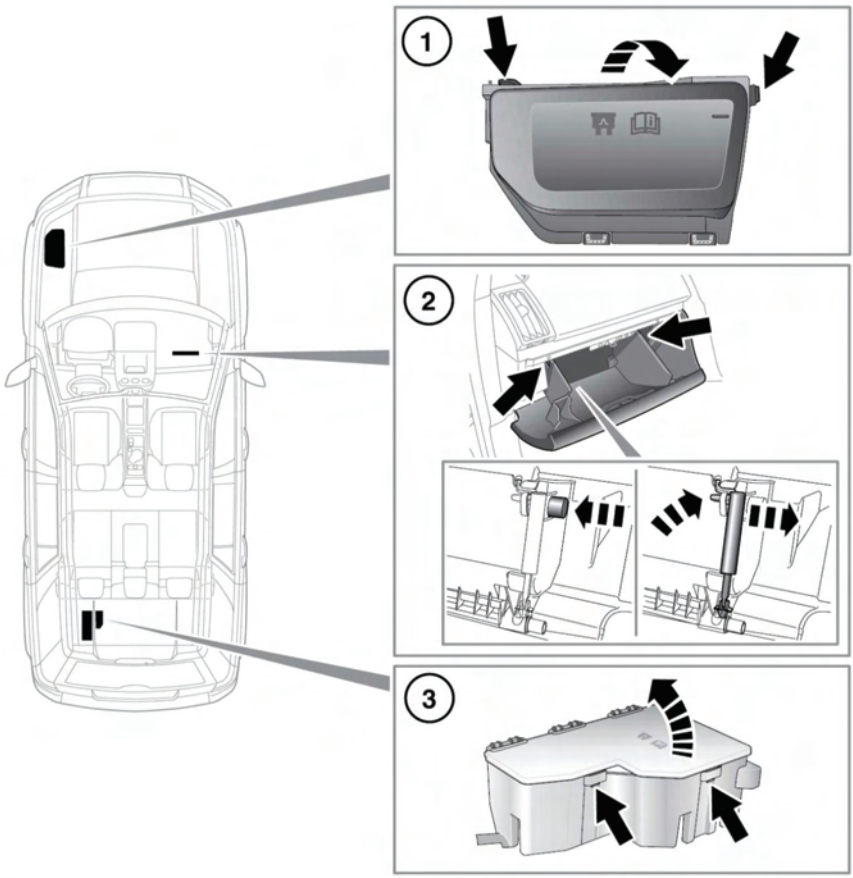
If it becomes necessary to fit traction devices, the following points must be observed:

- Only Land Rover approved traction devices should be used on the vehicle. Only Land Rover approved traction devices have been tested to ensure that they do not cause damage to the vehicle. Contact a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer for information.
- The wheels and tyres fitted must conform to the specifications of the original equipment.
- Half chain traction devices can be fitted to the front wheels of vehicles fitted with 17 inch and 18 inch diameter wheels.
- Fit traction devices in pairs on the same axle.
- Always read, understand and follow the traction device manufacturer's instructions. Pay particular attention to the maximum speed and fitting instructions.
- Avoid tyre/vehicle damage, by removing the traction devices as soon as the conditions allow.

TYRE DECLARATION (India only)

All imported tyres meet the requirements of Bureau of India Standards (BIS) and comply with the requirements under Central Motor Vehicle Rules (CMVR) 1989. The tyres are the same as those tyres supplied as Original Equipment (OE) for Land Rover models which are fully Type Approved for the Indian market.

FUSE BOX LOCATIONS



E145595

When a fuse box lid is removed, take care to protect the box from moisture, and refit the lid at the earliest opportunity.

1. Engine compartment fuse box.
   - The fuse numbers and positions are shown on the inside of the fuse box cover.

2. Passenger compartment fuse box.
   - Open the glove box. See **55, STORAGE COMPARTMENTS**.
   - Lower the glove box by lightly pushing in at each support stay at the top of the left-hand and right-hand corners.
   - Lightly push in the thumb catch at the top of the support strut. Lift and lightly pull away to release the top of the strut.
   - Remove the glove box by lightly pulling towards the rear of the vehicle to release it from the lower clips.
   - Lift up the flap in the insulation material to access the fuse board.
   - A label on the rear of the glove box will show the fuse numbers and positions.
3. Luggage compartment fuse box.
   - The fuse numbers and positions are shown on the inside of the fuse box cover.

CHANGING A FUSE

Fit Land Rover approved replacement fuses of the same rating and type, or fuses of matching specification. Using an incorrect fuse, may result in damage to the vehicle's electrical system and can result in a fire.

If the replacement fuse blows after installation, the system should be checked by a Land Rover Dealer/Authorised Repairer.

Note: *Land Rover recommend that relays should only be replaced by qualified personnel.*

Always switch off the ignition, and the affected electrical circuit, before replacing a fuse.

Note: *Spare fuses and a puller are located in the passenger compartment fuse box.*

ENGINE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
F1	-	-	-
F2	5	tan	Voltage module
F3	80	clear	Cooling fans
F4	60	blue	Glow plugs (diesel only)
F5	-	-	-
F6	15	blue	Engine management. Oxygen sensors
F7	5	tan	Relays
F8	20	yellow	Engine management
F9	10	red	Engine management
F10	15	blue	Automatic transmission
F11	10	red	Engine management
F12	15	blue	Engine management
F13	10	red	Air conditioning

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
F14	15	blue	Engine management. Air conditioning
F15	40	orange	Starter motor
F16	100	violet	Electric booster heater (diesel only)
F17	60	blue	Passenger compartment fuse box supply
F18	60	blue	Passenger compartment fuse box supply
F19	60	blue	Luggage compartment fuse box supply. Audio system
F20	60	blue	Luggage compartment fuse box supply
F21	60	blue	Luggage compartment fuse box supply
F22	30	green	Windscreen wipers
F23	40	orange	Passenger compartment fuse box supply
F24	-	-	-
F25	30	green	Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)
F26	40	orange	ABS
F27	40	orange	Passenger compartment fuse box supply
F28	40	orange	Heater blower
F29	-	-	-
F30	15	blue	Headlamp washer
F31	15	blue	Horns
F32	20	yellow	Auxiliary heater (diesel only)
F33	5	tan	Relays
F34	40	orange	Heated windscreen (left-hand)
F35	40	orange	Heated windscreen (right-hand)

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
F36	5	tan	Auxiliary heater water pump (diesel only)
F37	20	yellow	Fuel pump
F38	10	red	Parking aid module
F39	-	-	-
F40	-	-	-
F41	-	-	-
F42	5	tan	Headlamp levelling control
F43	5	tan	Automatic high beam. Rear view camera
F44	10	red	Heated steering wheel
F45	5	tan	Auxiliary heater water pump (diesel only)

PASSENGER COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
F1	5	tan	RF receiver. Interior motion sensor. Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)
F2	-	-	-
F3	15	blue	Front fog lamps
F4	-	-	-
F5	5	tan	Slip control module
F6	5	tan	Ignition supply for engine compartment fuse box and loadspace fuse box relay.
F7	-	-	-
F8	25	clear	Front passenger door module
F9	5	tan	EPB
F10	5	tan	Heated washer jets
F11	10	red	Reverse light trailer
F12	10	red	Reverse lights. Mirror control

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
F13	-	-	-
F14	5	tan	Brake pedal switch
F15	30	green	Heated rear screen
F16	-	-	-
F17	5	tan	Keyless Vehicle Module (KVM)
F18	-	-	-
F19	5	tan	Power-train Control Module (PCM)
F20	5	tan	Accelerator pedal
F21	5	tan	Instrument panel. Centre console. Electric booster heater
F22	5	tan	Transmission Control Module (TCM)
F23	-	-	-
F24	5	tan	Rear fog lamp (right-hand)
F25	5	tan	Rear fog lamp (left-hand)
F26	-	-	-
F27	-	-	-
F28	-	-	-
F29	-	-	-
F30	-	-	-
F31	5	tan	Voltage module. Rain sensor. Passenger Air-bag Deactivation (PAD) lamp
F32	25	clear	Driver door module
F33	-	-	-
F34	10	red	Fuel flap
F35	-	-	-
F36	5	tan	Battery backed sounder
F37	5	tan	Road pricing (Singapore only)
F38	15	blue	Front screen washer

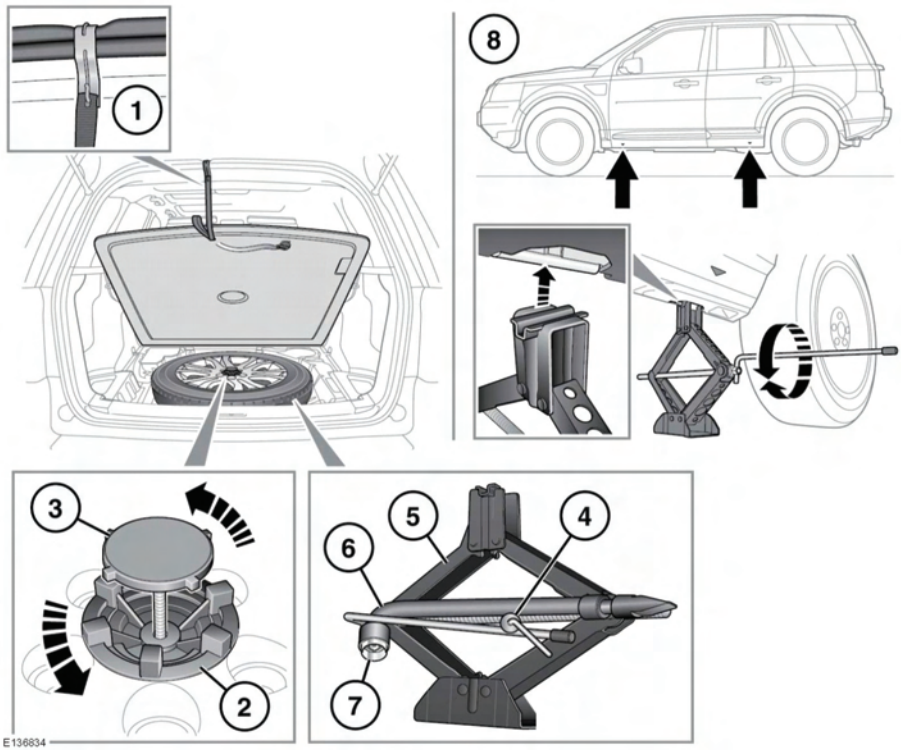
Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
F39	25	clear	Rear door module (left-hand)
F40	5	tan	Clock. Door memory switch
F41	-	-	-
F42	30	green	Driver seat
F43	15	blue	Rear screen washer
F44	25	clear	Rear door module (right-hand)
F45	30	green	Front passenger seat
F46	-	-	-
F47	20	yellow	Sunroof and sunblind module
F48	15	blue	Trailer connector
F49	-	-	-
F50	-	-	-
F51	5	tan	Steering wheel switches
F52	20	yellow	Cigar lighter (front)
F53	-	-	-
F54	-	-	-
F55	20	yellow	Auxiliary socket (rear console)
F56	10	red	Restraints control module (RCM)
F57	10	red	Battery saver circuits. Vanity mirror lamp. Glove box lamp. Upper console lamp
F58	-	-	-
F59	-	-	-
F60	5	tan	Occupant Classification Sensor Control Module (OCSCM)
F61	5	tan	Immobiliser Antenna Unit (IAU)
F62	10	red	Climate control module

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
F63	20	yellow	Auxiliary socket (luggage compartment)
F64	-	-	-
F65	-	-	-
F66	5	tan	On Board Diagnostic (OBD) connector
F67	-	-	-
F68	-	-	-
F69	-	-	-

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
FB1	15	blue	Electronic centre differential
FB2	15	blue	Caravan fridge
FB3	15	blue	Driver seat heater
FB4	15	blue	Front passenger seat heater
FB5	5	tan	Auxiliary heater control
FB6	-	-	-
FB7	-	-	-
FB8	10	red	Instrument pack
FB9	5	tan	Heating and ventilation system
FB10	-	-	-
FB11	-	-	-
FB12	-	-	-
FD1	10	red	Audio system. Touch screen
FD2	15	blue	Audio system
FD3	10	red	Digital radio
FD4	-	-	-
FD5	5	tan	Electric seat switches
FD6	30	green	Electric Park Brake (EPB)
FD7	15	blue	Rear wiper
FD8	30	green	EPB
FD9	-	-	-
FD10	5	tan	Audio amplifier
FD11	40	orange	Audio amplifier
FD12	-	-	-

WHEEL CHANGING



The spare wheel is heavy and if handled incorrectly may cause injury. Use extreme caution when lifting or manoeuvring the wheels.

Always secure the spare wheel, or the removed wheel, in the correct position using the retaining bolt.

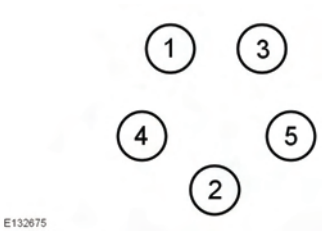
Always remove the spare wheel before jacking the vehicle.

WARNING - THAT NO PERSON SHOULD PLACE ANY PORTION OF THEIR BODY UNDER A VEHICLE THAT IS SUPPORTED BY A JACK.

Note: *Before removing the spare wheel, take note of its stowage position. The wheel to be changed must be correctly stowed in its place.*

1. To access the spare wheel lift the floor panel and fit the retaining strap hook to the tailgate guttering.
2. Slacken the locking ring.
3. Undo and remove the retaining bolt. Then lift out the spare wheel.
4. To remove the jack and wheel brace undo the retaining bolt.
5. Vehicle jack.
6. Wheel brace.
7. Locking wheel nut adapter.

8. Raise the vehicle using the jack with a slow steady operation. Avoid rapid, jerky actions as they may cause the vehicle/jack to become unstable.
9. Remove the wheel nuts and place them together where they cannot roll away.
10. Remove the wheel and place to one side. Do not lay the wheel on its face, as this may damage the finish.
11. Fit the spare wheel to the hub.
12. Re-fit the wheel nuts, and lightly tighten them. Ensure that the wheel is making contact with the hub evenly.
13. Ensure that the space under the vehicle is clear of obstructions, and lower the vehicle slowly and smoothly.
14. With all wheels on the ground and the jack removed, fully tighten the wheel nuts. The wheel nuts must be tightened in sequence (see illustration) to the correct torque of 133 Nm (98 lb.ft).



Note: *If it is not possible to torque the wheel nuts when a wheel is replaced, they should be set to the correct torque as soon as possible.*

If an alloy spare wheel is to be fitted, using a suitable blunt tool, knock the centre cap out of the removed wheel. Then using hand pressure only, press the centre cap into the newly fitted spare.

Check and adjust the tyre pressure as soon as possible.

WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY

Before raising the vehicle or changing a wheel, ensure that you read and comply with the following warnings.

Always find a safe place to stop, off the highway and away from traffic.

Ensure that the vehicle and jack are both on firm level ground.

Apply the parking brake. Engage Park (P).

Switch on the hazard warning lamps.

Ensure that the front wheels are in the straight ahead position, and engage the steering lock.

Disconnect trailer/caravan from vehicle.

Ensure that all passengers, and animals, are out of the vehicle and in a safe place away from the highway.

Place a warning triangle at a suitable distance behind the vehicle, facing towards oncoming traffic.

Never place anything between the jack and the ground, or the jack and the vehicle.

Always chock the wheels using suitable wheel chocks. Place the chocks on both sides of the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.

If jacking the vehicle on a slight slope is unavoidable, place the chocks on the downhill side of the two opposite wheels.

Take care when lifting the spare wheel, and removing the punctured wheel. The wheels are heavy, and can cause injuries if not handled correctly.

Remove the spare wheel prior to jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilising the vehicle when raised.

Take care when loosening the wheel nuts. The wheel brace may slip off if not properly attached and the wheel nuts may give way suddenly. Either unexpected movement, may cause an injury.

WARNING - THAT NO PERSON SHOULD PLACE ANY PORTION OF THEIR BODY UNDER A VEHICLE THAT IS SUPPORTED BY A JACK.

IMPORTANT – USE OF SPARE TYRE

Adhere to the instructions on the temporary spare warning label, affixed to the wheel.

Where fitted the temporary use spare wheel is FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY. Drive with caution while the temporary spare wheel is fitted. Ensure that an original size wheel and tyre are fitted as soon as possible.

Do not fit more than one temporary spare wheel on the vehicle at any one time.

Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) while the temporary spare wheel is fitted.

The tyre pressure in the temporary spare wheel should be 60 psi (4.2 Bar, 420 kPa).

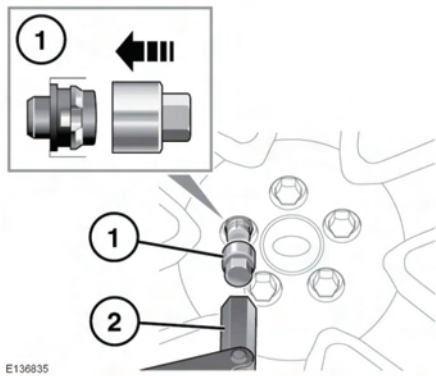
DSC must be switched on while the temporary spare wheel is in use.

Traction devices such as snow chains cannot be used with a temporary spare wheel.

LOCKING WHEEL NUTS

Locking wheel nuts can only be removed using the special adapter provided in the tool kit.

Note: *When the vehicle is first supplied, the adapter may be stored in the glove compartment. It should be removed and stored in the tool kit as soon as possible.*



1. Insert the adapter into the locking wheel nut, ensuring that it is fully engaged.
2. Using the wheel brace, unscrew the wheel nut and adapter.

Note: *A code number is stamped onto the underside of the adapter. This number must be recorded on the security card supplied with the literature pack. If a replacement adapter is required, you will be asked to quote this number. The security card must be kept safe, but should not be kept with the vehicle.*

BEFORE STARTING OR DRIVING



If the vehicle is involved in a collision it should be checked by a Dealer/ Authorised Repairer, or suitably qualified persons, before starting or driving.

EVENT DATA RECORDING

Event data recorders are capable of collecting and storing data during a crash or near-crash event. The recorded information may assist in the investigation of such an event. The modules may record information about both the vehicle and the occupants, potentially including such information as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seat belts were buckled.
- How far, if at all, the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was travelling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

To access this information special equipment must be connected directly to the recording modules. Land Rover do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or third parties acting with lawful authority.

Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Land Rover.

SERVICE DATA RECORDING

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle such as engine, throttle, steering or brakes.

In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Land Rover and service and repair facilities may access vehicle diagnostic information through a direct connection to your vehicle.

LABEL LOCATIONS

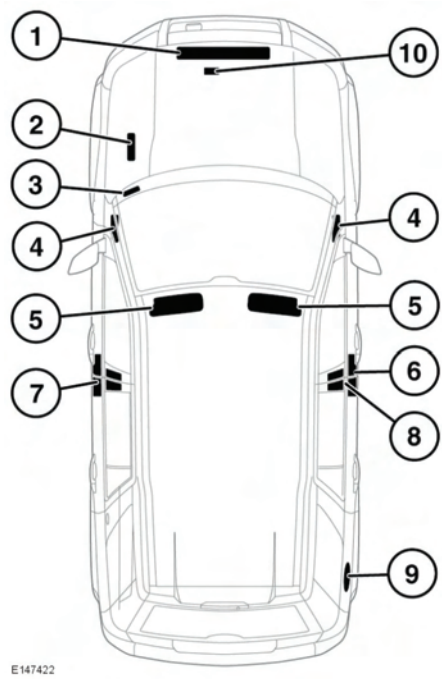


Warning labels attached to your vehicle bearing this symbol mean: Do not touch or adjust components until you have read the relevant instructions in the handbook.



Labels showing this symbol indicate that the ignition system utilises very high voltages. Do not touch any ignition components while the starter switch is turned on.

Additional information labels may also be found at the following locations:



1. Bonnet locking platform - Air conditioning label
2. Top of battery - Battery warning symbols
3. The VIN is stamped on a plate which is visible through the lowest part of the left side of the windscreen.

   Note: *If you need to communicate with a Dealer/Authorised Repairer, you may be asked to quote the VIN number.*
4. End of fascia (passenger side) - Passenger airbag label.
5. Sun visor - Airbag label, vehicle handling label.
6. Base of right-hand B pillar - Tyre pressure label, airbag warning label.
7. Left-hand B pillar - Airbag warning label, Vehicle Identification Number plate.

8. Right-hand B pillar - Vehicle Identification Number plate (China).
9. Inside fuel filler flap - Fuel label.
10. Engine number:
    - Diesel - The number is located on the front of the engine block.
    - Petrol - The number is located on the front of the engine block.

It is important that you are familiar with these subjects to ensure that your vehicle and its features are used safely. Using the index at the back of this handbook, refer to the relevant topic for more information.

VEHICLE BUILD DATE PLATE (Australia only)

This is the calendar month and year in which the body and power train assemblies were conjoined and the vehicle was driven from the production line.

The vehicle built date is shown on a the tyre pressure label attached to the right-hand 'B' pillar.

E136940

SIEMENS VDO
Automotive

SiemensVDO Automotive AG ,P.O. Box 10 09 43 ,D-93009 Regensburg

Name	Dagmar Kolar
Department	SV C TS RBG EMC-Laboratory
Tel.	+49(0)941/790-6699
Fax	+49(0)941/790-136699
E-Mail	dagmar.kolar@siemens.com
Internet	www.siemensvdo.de
Our Ref.	Doc_5WK49096.doc
Date.	03/08/2005

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer: Siemens VDO Automotive AG
Body & Chassis Electronics

Address: Dep. SV C BC P2 RF TG
Siemenstrasse 12
D-93049 Regensburg
Germany

Product type designation: 5WK4 9096

Intended use: Radio frequency receiver used in vehicle locking/unlocking systems

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to §3.1.a: *Applied standard(s):* EN 60950:2000

Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1.b: *Applied standard(s):* EN 301 489-1,-3: V1.4.1 (2002-08)

Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2: *Applied standard(s):* EN 300 220-1: V1.3.1 (2000-09)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:

CE

Siemens VDO Automotive AG

Regensburg, 2005-08-03

i.V.
Jean-Francois Tarabbia
Executive Vice President
Body and Chassis Electronics Operations

i.V.
Dr. Martin Fischer
Vice President
Wireless Products and Modules

SiemensVDO Automotive AG Body & Chassis Electronics
Helmut Matschi
Klaus Müller
Postal Address: SiemensVDO Automotive AG
P.O. Box 10 09 43
D-93009 Regensburg
Office Address: Siemenstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Tel. +49(0)941/790-0

SiemensVDO Automotive AG ,Chairman of the Supervisory Board: Edward G. Krubasik ,Managing Board: Franz Wressnig, Chairman ,Members: Klaus Eppler, Günter Hauptmann, Johann Löttner ,Registered Office: München ,Commercial Registry: München, HRB 132637

SIEMENS VDO
Automotive

SiemensVDO Automotive AG ,P.O. Box 10 09 43 ,D-93009 Regensburg

Name	Dagmar Kolar
Department	SV C TS RBG EMC Laboratory
Tel.	+49(0)941/790-6699
Fax	+49(0)941/790-1366999
E-Mail	dagmar.kolar@siemens.com
Internet	www.siemensvdo.de
Our Ref.	Doc_S122780002.doc
Date.	09/11/2005

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer: Siemens VDO Automotive AG
Body & Chassis Electronics

Address: Siemensstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Germany

Product type designation: S122780002

Intended use: Radio frequency transmitter used Tire Pressure Monitoring system

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to §3.1.a: *Applied standard(s):* EN 60950: 2000

Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1.b: *Applied standard(s):* EN 301 489 -1,-3: V1.4.1 (2002-08)

Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2: *Applied standard(s):* EN 300 220 -1: V1.3.1 (2000-09)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:

CE

Siemens VDO Automotive AG

Regensburg, 2005-11-09

i.V.
Jean-Francois Tarabbia
Executive Vice President
Body and Chassis Electronics Operations

i.V.
Dr. Martin Fischer
Vice President
Wireless Products and Modules

SiemensVDO Automotive AG Body & Chassis Electronics
Helmut Matschi
Klaus Müller
Postal Address: SiemensVDO Automotive AG
P.O. Box 10 09 43
D-93009 Regensburg
Office Address: Siemensstraße 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Tel. +49(0)941/790-0

SiemensVDO Automotive AG ,Chairman of the Supervisory Board: Edward G. Krubasik ,Managing Board: Franz Wressnig, Chairman ,Members: Klaus Eppler, Günter Hauptmann, Johann Löttner ,Registered Office: München ,Commercial Registry: München, HRB 132637

Lear Corporation
Electronics Systems Division
21557 Telegraph Road
Southfield, MI 48033-4248
USA
Phone (248) 447-1500

Date: February 6, 2009

INFORMATION TO BE INCLUDED IN THE END USER'S MANUAL

The following information must be included in the end product user's manual to ensure continued FCC and Industry Canada regulatory compliance. The ID numbers must be included in the manual if the device label is not readily accessible to the end user. The compliance paragraphs below must be included in the user's manual.

The following user's manual statements are provided by Lear Corporation to Jaguar Land Rover electronically after certification.

Key fobs

Land Rover, Range Rover,

FCC ID: KOBJTF10A (Range Rover, Land Rover)
FCC ID: KOBJTF10B (Jaguar)
IC: 3521A-JTF10A (Range Rover, Land Rover)
IC: 3521A-JTF10B (Jaguar)
Model #: AH42-15K601A (Range Rover)
Model #: AH22-15K601A (Land Rover)
Model #: AW93-15K601A (Jaguar)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Lear Corporation
Electronics Systems Division
21557 Telegraph Road
Southfield, MI 48033-4248
USA
Phone (248) 447-1500

RKE Receiver

Land Rover, Range Rover, Jaguar

FCC ID: KOBJLR09A
IC: 3521-JLR09A
Model #: AH42-15K602-A

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Passive Entry / Passive Start Module

Land Rover, Range Rover, Jaguar

FCC ID: KOBJBG10A
IC: 3521-JBG10A
Model #: AH22-19H440 (PEPS)
Model #: AH42-19H440 (Passive Start ONLY)

FCC ID: KOBJBG10B
IC: 3521-JBG10B
Model #: AH22-19H440 (PEPS)
Model #: AH42-19H440 (Passive Start ONLY)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

E136842

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive.	**1999/5/EC**
Manufacturer:	**Lear Corporation**
Type Designation / FCC ID:	**KOBJBG10B**
Model Numbers:	**5E0770257, 5E0770357, 19H440, AH22-19H440, AH42-19H440, AH22-19H440-AD, AH42-19H440-AE**
Description / Intended Use:	**Remote Function Actuator (RFA), passive keyless entry and start system low frequency initiator**
Trademarks.	**Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar**
Applied Standards.	**European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC** **ETSI EN 60950** **ETSI EN 300 330** **CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03** **AS/NZS 4268** **FCC Regulations 47 CFR Part 15**
Responsible Person:	**Kevin Cotton** **Lear Corporation** **21557 Telegraph Road** **Southfield, Michigan 48033** **United States of America**

Hereby, **Lear Corporation** declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of **Directive 1999/5/EC**, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to **Directive 1999/5/EC**

Signed. Kevin Cotton
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date. **27 March 2009**

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive.	**1999/5/EC**
Manufacturer:	**Lear Corporation**
Type Designation / FCC ID:	**KOBJBG10A**
Model Numbers:	**5E0770237, 5E0770337, 19H440, AH22-19H440-AC, AH42-19H440-AD, AH22-19H440, AH42-19H440**
Description / Intended Use:	**Remote Function Actuator (RFA), passive keyless entry and start system low frequency initiator**
Trademarks:	**Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar**
Applied Standards:	**European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC** **ETSI EN 60950** **ETSI EN 300 330** **CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03** **AS/NZS 4268** **FCC Regulations 47 CFR Part 15**
Responsible Person:	**Kevin Cotton** **Lear Corporation** **21557 Telegraph Road** **Southfield, Michigan 48033** **United States of America**

Hereby, **Lear Corporation** declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of **Directive 1999/5/EC**, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to **Directive 1999/5/EC**

Signed. Kevin Cotton
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date. **27 March 2009**

E136843

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive:	**1999/5/EC**
Manufacturer:	**Lear Corporation**
Type Designation:	**5E0760127**
Model Numbers:	**5E0760127, 15K602, AH42-15K602-B, AH42-15K602-BC**
Description / Intended Use:	**RF Receiver (RFR), used in passive entry and passive start, remote keyless entry, and tire pressure monitoring systems**
Trademarks:	**Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar**
Applied Standards:	**European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC** **ETSI EN 60950** **ETSI EN 300 220** **CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03** **AS/NZS 4268**
Responsible Person.	**Kevin Cotton** **Lear Corporation** **21557 Telegraph Road** **Southfield, Michigan 48033** **United States of America**

Hereby, **Lear Corporation** declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of **Directive 1999/5/EC**, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to **Directive 1999/5/EC**.

Signed: Kevin Cotton
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date: **27 March 2009**

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive:	**1999/5/EC**
Manufacturer:	**Lear Corporation**
Type Designation:	**15K601**
Model Numbers:	**5E0B50127, 5E0B60127, 15K601-BB, AH42-15K601B, AH22-15K601B, AH42-15K601-BC, AH22-15K601-BC**
Description / Intended Use:	**Passive Key (PK) / Customer Identification Device (CID), passive keyless entry system keyfob**
Trademarks:	**Land Rover / Range Rover**
Applied Standards:	**CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03** **ETSI EN 60950** **ETSI EN 300 220** **ETSI EN 301 489** **IEC EN 60950** **AS/NZS 4268**
Responsible Person.	**Kevin Cotton** **Lear Corporation** **21557 Telegraph Road** **Southfield, Michigan 48033** **United States of America**

Hereby, **Lear Corporation** declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of **Directive 1999/5/EC**, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to **Directive 1999/5/EC**.

Signed. Kevin Cotton
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date: **26 March 2009**

E136844

QuieTek

快特電波股份有限公司
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者： Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商： Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱： RFA (Passive Start)
四、廠牌/型號： LEAR / 5E0770337
五、發射功率（電場強度）：125KHz ; 61.5dBuV/m(Average)
六、工作頻率： 125KHz

七、發證日期： 98 年 06 月 02 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：

CCAH09LP0570T1

說明：

1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼或印鑄於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者，本證明持有人檢附同意書報請國家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：

1、本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 2.8節之規定。
2、本驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3、本器材所使用固定式天線廠牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

QuieTek

快特電波股份有限公司
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者： Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商： Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱： Range Rover FOB
四、廠牌/型號： Range Rover / 5E0B60227
五、發射功率（電場強度）：315MHz ; 84.195dBuV/m(Peak)
六、工作頻率： 315MHz

七、發證日期： 98 年 06 月 02 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：

CCAH09LP0550T5

說明：

1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼或印鑄於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者，本證明持有人檢附同意書報請國家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：

1、本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 3.4.2節之規定。
2、本驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3、本器材所使用固定式天線廠牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

E136845

QuieTek

快特電波股份有限公司
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者：Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱：Range Rover FOB
四、廠牌/型號：Range Rover / 5E0B50227
五、發射功率（電場強度）：315MHz ; 84.195dBuV/m(Peak)
六、工作頻率：315MHz

七、發證日期：98 年 06 月 02 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：CCAH09LP0551T7

說明：
1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼或印鑄於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者。本證明持有人檢附同意書報請國家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：
1、本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 3.4.2節之規定。
2、本驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3、本器材所使用固定式天線廠牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

QuieTek

快特電波股份有限公司
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者：Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱：RFA (Passive Start & Start Module)
四、廠牌/型號：LEAR / 5E0770237
五、發射功率（電場強度）：125KHz ; 63.3dBuV/m(Average)
六、工作頻率：125KHz

七、發證日期：98 年 06 月 02 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：CCAH09LP0560T8

說明：
1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼或印鑄於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者。本證明持有人檢附同意書報請國家通訊傳播委員會備查後，得授權他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：
1、本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002 2.8節之規定。
2、本驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3、本器材所使用固定式天線廠牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

E136946

QuieTek

快特電波股份有限公司
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申 請 者：Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱：Jaguar fob
四、廠牌/型號：JAGUAR / 5E0B4P217
五、發射功率（電場強度）：315MHz ; 83.225dBuV/m(Peak)
六、工作頻率：315MHz

七、審驗日期：98 年 07 月 01 日
八、審驗合格標籤式樣：

CCAH09LP0830T1

說明：

1. 請依上列標籤式樣自製標籤，標貼或印刷於器材本體明顯處，始得販賣或公開陳列。
2. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得廢止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 送審廠商應保留送審樣品供日後核對。
5. 本型式認證證明及其合格標籤使用權專屬取得本證明者，依電信管制射頻器材審驗辦法第15條規定，持有人得經由網際網路申請同意他人於同廠牌同型號之電信管制射頻器材使用型式認證標籤，並於次日起 30 天內，應檢具「電信管制射頻器材審驗合格標籤或符合性聲明標籤同意使用備查表」送本會備查。

備註：

1、本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範(LP0002 3.4.2節)之規定。
2、驗證機構係經國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3、本器材使用固定式天線，廠牌/型號為:Lear Corporation / N/A。

Continental

Continental Automotive GmbH – Postfach 100 953 – 93009 Regensburg

Kolar Dagmar
AQL RBG 42
Phone +49 (941) 790-6699
Fax +49 (941) 790-136699
dagmar.kolar@continental-corporation.com

Date	Your message dated	Our Reference	Your reference
July 29, 2008			

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer:	Continental Automotive GmbH
Address:	Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany
Product type designation:	S180 052 020 A
Intended use:	Tire Pressure System

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to §3.1.a:	*Applied standard(s):* EN 60950-1: 2006
Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1.b:	*Applied standard(s):* EN 301 489 -1: V1.6.1 (2005-09) EN 301 489 -3: V1.4.1 (2002-08)
Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2:	*Applied standard(s):* EN 300 220 -1: V2.1.1 (2006-04) EN 300 220 -2: V2.1.1 (2006-04)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:

CE

Continental Automotive GmbH

Regensburg, 2008-07-29

Andreas Wolf
Executive Vice President
Body &Security

i.V.
Norbert Müller
Director Product Group 3
Body & Security

E136847

전자문서확인번호 WHSW-31GL-V7SG-VXVD

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

인증의 종류 *Certification Type*	형식등록(Type Registration)
상호 또는 성명 *Trade Name or Applicant*	LEAR CORPORATION
기기의 명칭 *Equipment Name*	특정소출력무선기기(데이터전송용 무선기기)
기본모델명 *Basic Model Number*	5E0B40
파생모델명 *Series Model Number*	
인증번호 *Certification No*	LER-5E0B40
제조자/제조국가 *Manufacturer/Country of Origin*	Lear Automotive Electronics and Electrical/중국
형식기호 *Type Identification*	LARN2-103L433.92T,0.125R0.003F1D1
인증연월일 *Date of Certification*	2009년(Year) 07월(Month) 15일(Date)
기타 *Others*	

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 07월(Month) 15일(Date)

전파연구소장

Director General of Radio Research Laboratory

Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

전자문서확인번호 NC49-Y219-MT4V-UKBD

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

인증의 종류 *Certification Type*	형식등록(Type Registration)
상호 또는 성명 *Trade Name or Applicant*	LEAR CORPORATION
기기의 명칭 *Equipment Name*	데이터전송용 무선기기
기본모델명 *Basic Model Number*	5E0B5P127
파생모델명 *Series Model Number*	5E0B50,5E0B60
인증번호 *Certification No*	LER-5E0B5P127
제조자/제조국가 *Manufacturer/Country of Origin*	Lear Automotive Electronics and Electrical/중국
형식기호 *Type Identification*	LARN2-103L433.92T,0.125R0.003F1D1
인증연월일 *Date of Certification*	2009년(Year) 05월(Month) 22일(Date)
기타 *Others*	

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 05월(Month) 28일(Date)

전파연구소장

Director General of Radio Research Laboratory

Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

E136848

전자문서확인번호 7N7R-CFNJ-RMWI-SU1X

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

인증의 종류 *Certification Type*	형식등록(Type Registration)
상호 또는 성명 *Trade Name or Applicant*	LEAR CORPORATION
기기의 명칭 *Equipment Name*	비약 전계강도 무선기기
기본모델명 *Basic Model Number*	5E0770237
파생모델명 *Series Model Number*	
인증번호 *Certification No*	LER-5E0770237
제조자/제조국가 *Manufacturer/Country of Origin*	Lear Valls Automotive Electronics and Electrical/스페인
형식기호 *Type Identification*	LPD-103L0.125TA1D
인증연월일 *Date of Certification*	2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)
기타 *Others*	

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)

전파연구소장

Director General of Radio Research Laboratory

Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

전자문서확인번호 JVC5-A5YQ-BF4C-1DBT

방송통신기기인증서

Certificate of Broadcasting and Communication Equipment

인증의 종류 *Certification Type*	형식등록(Type Registration)
상호 또는 성명 *Trade Name or Applicant*	LEAR CORPORATION
기기의 명칭 *Equipment Name*	비약 전계강도 무선기기
기본모델명 *Basic Model Number*	5E0770237
파생모델명 *Series Model Number*	5E0770337
인증번호 *Certification No*	LER-5E0770237
제조자/제조국가 *Manufacturer/Country of Origin*	Lear Valls Automotive Electronics and Electrical/스페인
형식기호 *Type Identification*	LPD-103L0.125TA1D
인증연월일 *Date of Certification*	2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 04일(Date)
기타 *Others*	

위 기기는 「전기통신기본법」, 「전파법」에 따라 인증되었음을 증명합니다.
It is certified that foregoing equipment has been certificated under the Framework Act on Telecommunications and Radio Waves Act.

2009년(Year) 09월(Month) 18일(Date)

전파연구소장

Director General of Radio Research Laboratory

Korea Communications Commission Republic of Korea

E136849

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
Pinmill Farm, 164 Katherine Street, Sandton
Private Bag X10002, Sandton, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009/302

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (see overleaf), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name	:	**Jaguar Land Rover SA**
Street Address	:	**Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton**
Telephone Number	:	**012 842 3274**
Facsimile Number	:	**012 845 1005**
Registration Number	:	**2001/027269/07**

Description of Apparatus

Category	:	**Remote Function Actuator (RFA)**
Model	:	**KOBJBG10B**
Frequency Range	:	**119 – 135 kHz**
ITU Emission Code	:	**12KG1D**
Modulation	:	**BPSK**
Power Output	:	**+37.7 DbµA/m @ 3m**
Channel Spacing	:	**-**
Features	:	**-**

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Philemon Molefe
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

0 9 JUN 2009

P Moshilo (**Chairperson**), NA Barry, TLV Makhaxhe, R Nkuna, BB Nkombela, FK Sibande, Dr MM Sooliwa
Prof JCW van Rooyen SC, MM Zokwe (**Councillors**), **BK Motlana (CEO)**

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
Pinmill Farm, 164 Katherine Street, Sandton
Private Bag X10002, Sandton, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009/303

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (see overleaf), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name	:	**Jaguar Land Rover SA**
Street Address	:	**Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton**
Telephone Number	:	**012 842 3274**
Facsimile Number	:	**012 845 1005**
Registration Number	:	**2001/027269/07**

Description of Apparatus

Category	:	**Remote Function Actuator (RFA)**
Model	:	**KOBJBG10A**
Frequency Range	:	**119 – 135 kHz**
ITU Emission Code	:	**12KG1D**
Modulation	:	**BPSK**
Power Output	:	**+40.7 DbµA/m @ 3m**
Channel Spacing	:	**-**
Features	:	**-**

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Philemon Molefe
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

0 9 JUN 2009

P Moshilo (**Chairperson**), NA Barry, TLV Makhaxhe, R Nkuna, BB Nkombela, FK Sibande, Dr MM Sooliwa
Prof JCW van Rooyen SC, MM Zokwe (**Councillors**), **BK Motlana (CEO)**

1196850

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
Pinmill Farm, 164 Katherine Street, Sandton
Private Bag X10002, Sandton, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009/304

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (see overleaf), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name	:	**Jaguar Land Rover SA**
Street Address	:	**Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton**
Telephone Number	:	**012 842 3274**
Facsimile Number	:	**012 845 1005**
Registration Number	:	**2001/027269/07**

Description of Apparatus

Category	:	**Low Frequency Initiator FET Receiver**
Model	:	**5E0760127**
Frequency Range	:	**433.05 – 434.79 MHz**
ITU Emission Code	:	**739KK1D**
Modulation	:	**ASK, FSK**
Power Output	:	-
Channel Spacing	:	-
Features	:	-

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Philemon Molefe
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

0 9 JUN 2009

P Mashile (**Chairperson**), NA Batyi, TLV Makhakhe, R Nkuna, BB Ntombela, FK Sibande, Dr MM Sookwa

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
Pinmill Farm, 164 Katherine Street, Sandton
Private Bag X10002, Sandton, 2146

Radio Equipment Type Approval Certificate

Radio Equipment Type Approval Number

TA-2009/305

The Authority, in the exercise of the powers conferred upon it by section 35 (1) of the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), the applicable radio regulations which currently remain in force in terms of section 95 (2) of the Electronic Communications Act and subject to the terms and conditions set out in this document (see overleaf), hereby issues a radio equipment type approval certificate to the company whose name and particulars are listed below.

Company Particulars

Name	:	**Jaguar Land Rover SA**
Street Address	:	**Simon Vermooten Road, Silverton**
Telephone Number	:	**012 842 3274**
Facsimile Number	:	**012 845 1005**
Registration Number	:	**2001/027269/07**

Description of Apparatus

Category	:	**Key Fob Transmitter**
Model	:	**15K601**
Frequency Range	:	**433.05 MHz**
ITU Emission Code	:	**739KK1D**
Modulation	:	**ASK, FSK**
Power Output	:	**-14.6 dBm**
Channel Spacing	:	-
Features	:	-

Only the original or a certified copy of the radio equipment type approval certificate shall be considered valid.

Philemon Molefe
Senior Manager: Engineering & Technology

0 9 JUN 2009

P Mashile (**Chairperson**), NA Batyi, TLV Makhakhe, R Nkuna, BB Ntombela, FK Sibande, Dr MM Sookwa,
Prof JCW van Rooyen SC, MM Zrikwi (**Councillors**), **BK Motlana (CEO)**

E143644

ALPINE ELECTRONICS, INC.
20-1 Yoshima-Kogyodanchi Iwaki-City Fukushima 970-1192 Japan.
Phone: (+81) 246-36-4111 Fax: (+81) 246-36-5090

DECLARATION of CONFORMITY
For

CE

Product: Bluetooth Module
Model: IAM2.1 BT PWB EU4

Supplied by
ALPINE Electronics, Inc.
20-1,Yoshima-Kogyodanchi, Iwaki-shi
Fukushima 970-1192 Japan

Technical Construction File held by
ALPINE Electronics, Inc.
20-1,Yoshima-Kogyodanchi, Iwaki-shi
Fukushima 970-1192 Japan

Notified Body - R&TTE Directive N/A

	Standard used for comply
R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)	EN60065:2002+Amd.1:2006+Amd.2:2010
R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)	EN301-489-1 V1.8.1:2008-04 EN301-489-17 V2.1.1:2009-05
R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)	EN300 328 V1.7.1:2006-10

Means of Conformity

We declare under our sole responsibility that the Product (s) is conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the Radio and Telecommunication Terminal Equipment (R&TTE) Directive (1999/5/EC).

Date of issue: 08 July 2011

Signature of Responsible Person:

Isamu Takaku

Isamu Takaku
Global Engineering Strategy Office

E156851

KELAS COMEN 1998
AB 654321 C

Label to be used on the following products only:

- *citizen band radio equipment*
- *cellular equipment*
- *trunk radio equipment*
- *spread spectrum devices*
- *leased channel radio equipment*
- *cordless telephone*
- *wireless security devices*
- *wireless microphone*
- *radio-control equipment*
- *medical & biology telemetry equipment*

E143645

ALPINE ELECTRONICS, INC.
20-1 Yoshima-Kogyodanchi Iwaki-City Fukushima 970-1192 Japan.
Phone: (+81) 246-36-4111 Fax: (+81) 246-36-6090

DECLARATION of CONFORMITY
For

CE

Product: Bluetooth Module
Model: IAM2.1 BT PWB EU3

Supplied by
ALPINE Electronics, Inc.
20-1,Yoshima-Kogyodanchi, Iwaki-shi
Fukushima 970-1192 Japan

Technical Construction File held by
ALPINE Electronics, Inc.
20-1,Yoshima-Kogyodanchi, Iwaki-shi
Fukushima 970-1192 Japan

Notified Body - R&TTE Directive N/A

	Standard used for comply
R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(a) Safety)	EN60065:2002+Amd.1:2006+Amd.2:2010
R&TTE Directive (Article 3.1(b) EMC)	EN301-489-1 V1.8.1:2008-04 EN301-489-17 V2.1.1:2009-05
R&TTE Directive (Article 3.2 Spectrum)	EN300 328 V1.7.1:2006-10

Means of Conformity

We declare under our sole responsibility that the Product (s) is conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the Radio and Telecommunication Terminal Equipment (R&TTE) Directive (1999/5/EC).

Date of issue: 08 July 2011

Signature of Responsible Person:

Isamu Takaku

Isamu Takaku
Global Engineering Strategy Office

A

ABS (Anti-lock braking system)
warning lamp 48
Age degradation (tyres) 176
Air bags
SRS (Supplementary restraint system) 142
Air conditioning
air quality sensor 52
auto 51
Air quality sensor 52
Airbags
module covers 156
warning lamps 48
Alarm 9, 142
perimeter 9
Antifreeze level check 158
Anti-theft system 142
Anti-trap protection
windows 35
Arduous driving conditions 142
Audio
Settings 85
Audio/video
controls 84
portable media
connections 96
controls 94
pairing 97
play 97
video media player
controls 99
Auto mode (climate) 51
Automatic gearbox 64
Automatic locking 7
Auxiliary devices
connecting multiple devices 97

B

Battery
care 168
changing
timed climate remote 170
charging 170
jump starting
connecting cables 169
warning symbols 168
Beltminder
warning lamp 47
Belts 156
seatbelt warning lamp 47
Bluetooth 103
audio
pairing 97
media
pairing 97
telephone
compatibility 104
icons 106
overview 103
pairing 105
phonebook 107
safety 104
Bonnet
closing 145
opening 144
Boost starting 169
Brakes
ABS warning lamp 48
EBA (Emergency brake assist) 67
EBD (Electronic brake force distribution) 67
handbrake 68
parking brake
warning lamp 47
pedal travel 167
warning lamp 47
Bulbs
license plate 152
number plate 152
specification 165

C

Call volume 106
Capacities 163
Chairs

restricted seat travel 13
seatbelts 156
warning lamp 47
sitting correctly 13
Changing a bulb 146
Changing a fuse 179
Changing a road wheel 186
Changing the battery (timed climate) . . . 170
Charging the vehicle battery 170
Chassis number 190
Cleaning
exterior 154
interior 155
leather 155
parking sensors 72
Climate control
auto 51
Closing
single locking 9
Closing the bonnet 145
Condensation (headlamps) 32
Conformity declarations 120, 192
Consumption
fuel
urban cycle 141
Consumption (fuel) 140
Controls
headlamps 31
Coolant
checking the level 158
specification 158
top up 158
Courtesy delay (headlamps) 32
Critical warning messages 46
Cruise control
operating 76

D

DAB
ensembles 93
DAB radio
controls 91
Daily checks 142
Data recording 189
Dealer locations 115
Declarations of conformity 192
navigation system 120
Derv
sulphur content 138
Deselecting valet mode 83
Destination entry 112
postcode 114
search area 111
Diesel
engine 138
switching off 61
filler flap 138, 139
fuel consumption 140
misfuel device 139
specification 140
sulphur content 138
Diesel particulate filter (DPF) 143
Dimensions 164
Direction indicators
warning lamp 49
Door transceiver
entry gate 40
garage door opener 38
programming 38
programming a single button 39
rolling code device programming 39
Double locking 9
DPF (Diesel particulate filter) 143
Drive away locking 7
Driver controls 218
Driver information module
warning lamps 46
Driving
arduous conditions 142
before starting 189
controls 218
daily checks 142
DSC warning lamp
active 48
off 48

EBA (Emergency brake assist) 67
EBD (Electronic brake force distribution) 67
mirror dip when reversing 37
Position memory 13
sitting correctly 13
wipers
rain sensor 42
Driving abroad
headlamps 32
Driving position memory 13
DSC (Dynamic stability control)
switching off 66
switching on 66
warning lamp
active 48
off 48

E

EBA (Emergency brake assist) 67
EBD (Electronic brake force distribution) . 67
Electric seats
front 12
Electronic brake force distribution (EBD) . 67
Electronic data 189
Electronic parking brake (EPB) 68
Emergency
jump starting
connecting cables 169
Engine
compartment
fuse box 179
opening 144
overview 145
coolant level checking 158
diesel 138
DPF (Diesel particulate filter) 143
engine compartment 145
oil level check 157
specifications 162
switching off 61
Ensembles (DAB radio) 93
Entering a destination 112
Entertainment
DAB radio
controls 91
navigation
coordinates 114
menu 109
motorway 115
POI categories 115
POI (Points of interest) 113, 115
postcode 114
previous 114
restore defaults 113
TMC 116
TMC display 116
TMC icons 117
portable media
changing device 98
connecting devices 96
connecting multiple devices 97
connections 96
controls 94
lost connection 98
pairing 97
playing 97
radio
controls 89
RDS (Radio data system) 90
RSE (Rear screen entertainment)
screen settings 82
telephone
pairing 105
phonebook 107
touch screen 156
display icons 82
home menu 81
operating 82
setup 82
system settings 82
touch screen care 82
video media player
controls 99
EPB (Electric parking brake) 68
Ethanol 137

EU conformity (navigation system) 120
Event data recording 189
Exiting the vehicle
door locks and release levers. 10
global closing 9
Exterior cleaning 154
Exterior lamps
bulb changing 146
bulb specification. 165
Exterior mirrors 36

F

Flat spots. 176
Fluids
capacities. 163
coolant
specification. 158
top up 158
engine oil
check 157
fuel tank capacity. 140
power steering
check 160
specification. 160
specifications. 162
washer
specification. 161
top up 161
Fog lamps
warning lamp. 48
Front parking aid 71
system fault. 72
Fuel and refuelling
consumption 140
extra-urban cycle 141
urban cycle 141
diesel. 138
sulphur content 138
ethanol. 137
Filler flap 139
filler flap. 138
fuel consumption
urban cycle 141
fuel specification. 140
fuel system 144
methanol. 137
misfuel device. 139
MTBE (Methyl tertiary butyl ether) 138
octane rating. 137
reformulate gasoline 138
running out. 138
safety precautions. 137
tank capacity. 140
Fuses
changing. 179
engine compartment fuse box. 179
locations 178
luggage compartment fuse box. 185
Passenger compartment fuse box. 181

G

Garage door opener 38
entry gate 40
erase all programming 39
programming 38
a single button 39
rolling code device 39
Gearbox
automatic 64
temporary manual selection 65
Global closing. 9

H

Hand brake
warning lamp 47
Handbrake 68
Handling
DSC warning lamp
active. 48
off 48
EBD (Electronic brake force distribution) 67
Headlamps
bulb change 148
bulb changing. 146

bulb specification 165
condensation 32
controls 31
courtesy delay 32
driving abroad 32
high beam warning lamp 49
washers 42
xenon 147
Heated screens 52
Heated seats 52
Heating and ventilation
auto 51
High beam
warning lamp 49
Homelink 38
programming a single button 39
rolling code device programming 39

I

Ignition
rolling re-start 62
switching on 61
Indicators
warning lamp 49
Information messages 46
Infotainment
DAB radio
controls 91
navigation
coordinates 114
menu 109
motorway 115
POI categories 115
POI (Points of interest) 113, 115
postcode 114
previous 114
restore defaults 113
TMC 116
TMC display 116
TMC icons 117
portable media
changing device 98
connecting devices 96
connecting multiple devices 97
connections 96
controls 94
lost connection 98
pairing 97
playing 97
radio
controls 89
RDS (Radio data system) 90
RSE (Rear seat entertainment)
screen settings 82
telephone
pairing 105
phonebook 107
touch screen 156
display icons 82
home menu 81
operating 82
setup 82
system settings 82
touch screen care 82
video media player
controls 99
Inhibited media playback 100
Instrument panel
lamp test 46
warning lamps 46
Interior cleaning 155
Interior lamps
bulb changing 146
bulb specification 165

J

Jump starting 169

K

Keys
single locking 9

L

Label locations 190

Lamp test 46
Lamps 148
bulb changing 146
bulb specification. 165
condensation 32
controls 31
warning
parking brake 47
warning lamps 46
TPMS (Tyre pressure
monitoring system) 48
xenon headlamps. 147
Leather cleaning 155
License plate bulb 152
Lighting control
headlamp courtesy delay 32
Lights
bulb changing 146
headlamp 148
bulb specification. 165
condensation 32
controls 31
headlamp courtesy delay 32
Locking
door locks and release levers. 10
double locking 9
drive away 7
global closing 9
mislock 10
Locking and unlocking
alarm
perimeter 9
single locking. 9
unlocking 5
Lubricants
specifications. 162
Luggage compartment
fuse box. 185

M

Maintenance
blocked washer jets 146
bulb changing 146
bulb specification 165
capacities 163
changing a fuse. 179
checking the tyre pressures
after a repair 135
cleaning parking sensors 72
closing the bonnet 145
coolant level checking. 158
daily checks 142
DPF. 143
engine compartment 145
exterior cleaning 154
fuse box (luggage compartment) 185
interior cleaning 155
jump starting
connecting cables 169
label locations. 190
leather cleaning. 155
lubricants and fluid specifications. 162
number plate bulb. 152
smart key battery changing. 7
weekly checks. 142
Map (navigation system) 114
Map split screen (navigations system) . . . 110
Media 100
inhibited 100
portable
lost connection 98
play 97
portable media
connections. 96
Messages 46
Methanol. 137
Mirrors
dip when reversing 37
Mirrors and windows
exterior mirrors. 36
sunroof
reset 154
Misfuel device. 139
Moon roof
reset 154

mpg 140
MTBE (Methyl tertiary butyl ether) 138

N

Navigation
cancel guidance 113
destination entry 112
coordinates 114
emergency 114
motorway 115
postcode 114
previous 114
search area 111
start guidance 112
map 114
map split screen 110
menu 109
operating 108
overview 108
POI (Points of interest) 115
categories/sub-categories 115
quick POI selection 113
POI search 116
restore defaults 113
screen modes 111
TMC 116
display 116
icons 117
using TMC 118
voice commands (POI) 102
voice guidance 113
Number plate bulb 152

O

Occupant safety
seatbelts 156
warning lamp 47
Oil
engine
level check 157
engine oil specification 157
used engine oil 144
Opening
bonnet 144

P

Parking aid
operating 71
sensor cleaning 72
system fault 72
Parking brake 68
warning lamp 47
Passenger compartment fuse box 181
Perimeter alarm 9
Petrol
consumption 140
engine
switching off 61
octane rating 137
reformulated gasoline 138
specification 140
Petrol filler flap 138, 139
Phone
bluetooth 103
call volume 106
changing connected phone 105
compatibility 104
controls
steering wheel 106
icons 106
overview 103
pairing using touch screen 105
phonebook 107
safety 104
POI (Points of interest) 115
search 116
Portable media
changing device 98
connecting devices 96
connecting multiple devices 97
connections 96
controls 94
lost connection 98
pairing 97

playing 97
Power steering
fluid
check 160
specification 160
Pressures
checking
after a repair 135
tyres 174
Previous destination (navigation system) 114
Programming
garage door opener 38
erase all 39
Puncture repair kit 132
instructions for use 133
repair procedure 134
Punctured tyres 175

R

Radio
controls 89
DAB ensembles 93
RDS (Radio data system) 90
Rain sensor 42
RDS (Radio data system) 90
RDS-TMC 116, 118
display 116
icons 117
Rear media
screen settings 82
Recording
service data 189
Recovery
towing eyes 74
Reformulated gasoline 138
Refuelling
diesel 138
sulphur content 138
octane rating 137
reformulated gasoline 138
running out of fuel 138
safety precautions 137
Remote control
battery changing 7
Driving position memory 13
system transmitters 166
Replacement tyres 175
Resetting the windows 154
Restarting the engine whilst moving 62
Restore default settings
(navigation system) 113
Restricted seat travel 13
Reverse parking aid 71
system fault 72
Rolling re-start 62
RSE (Rear seat entertainment)
screen settings 82
Running out of fuel 138

S

Safety
fuel and refuelling 137
in the garage 143
seatbelts 156
warning lamp 47
sitting correctly 13
tyre care 173
used engine oil 144
using the telephone 104
Satellite navigation
cancel guidance 113
destination entry 112
coordinates 114
postcode 114
previous 114
search area 111
start guidance 112
emergency 114
map 114
map split screen 110
menu 109
motorway 115
operating 108
overview 108

POI (Points of interest) 115
categories 115
quick POI selection 113
POI search 116
restore defaults 113
screen modes 111
TMC 116
display 116
icons 117
using TMC 118
voice commands (POI) 102
voice guidance 113
Screen modes (navigation system) 111
Screens (heated) 52
Search area (navigation system) 111
Seatbelts 156
warning lamp 47
Seats
Driving position memory 13
electric
front 12
heated 52
restricted seat travel 13
seatbelts 156
warning lamp 47
sitting correctly 13
Security 9
alarm 142
perimeter 9
Selecting valet mode 83
Servicing
data recording 189
Setting a destination (navigation) 112
Settings
rear media 82
Sitting correctly 13
Smart key
battery changing 7
Driving position memory 13
single locking 9
transmitters 166
Snow chains 177
Spacesaver 186
Specifications
brake pedal travel 167
dimensions 164
engine 162
ethanol 137
fluids 162
washer 161
fuel 140
Fuel tank capacity 140
label locations 190
lubricants 162
methanol 137
weight 164
Speed-dependent wipers 42
Split screen map 110
SRS (Supplementary restraint system)
air bags 142
airbag covers 156
airbag warning lamp 48
Stability control
switching off 66
switching on 66
Starting
preparation 189
Starting navigation guidance 112
Steering wheel
adjusting 17
controls
connect phone call 106
decrease volume 106
disconnect phone call 106
increase volume 106
scroll/search down 106
voice control talk 106
Steering wheel controls 106
Storage compartments 55
cup holders 55
front cubby box 55
glove box 55
rear armrest 55
Sunroof
reset 154
Switching off the engine 61

Switching on the ignition 61

T

Technical specifications
weights 164
Telephone
bluetooth 103
call volume 106
changing the connected telephone . . . 105
compatibility 104
controls
steering wheel 106
icons 106
overview 103
pairing 105
phonebook 107
safety 104
Temporary use spare wheel 186
TMC (Traffic message channel) 118
display 116
icons 117
overview 116
Touch screen 156
display icons 82
home menu 81
navigation
coordinates 114
menu 109
motorway 115
POI categories 115
POI (Points of interest) 113, 115
postcode 114
screen modes 111
search area 111
TMC 116
TMC display 116
TMC icons 117
operating 82
portable media
changing device 98
connecting devices 96
connecting multiple devices 97
connections 96
controls 94
lost connection 98
pairing 97
playing 97
RSE (Rear seat entertainment)
screen settings 82
setup 82
system settings 82
telephone
pairing 105
phonebook 107
touch screen care 82
valet mode 83
video media player
controls 99
Towing eyes 74
TPMS (Tyre pressure monitoring system)
tyre care 173
valves 174
warning lamp 48
Traction control
switching off 66
switching on 66
Transmission
temporary manual selection 65
Transmission (automatic) 64
Transmitters
smart key 166
Trim
airbag covers (cleaning) 156
Tyre pressure checking after repair 135
Tyre repair kit
repair procedure 134
Tyres
age degradation 176
flat spots 176
pressures 174
punctured 175
repair kit 132, 133
repair procedure 134
replacements 175
snow chains 177

TPMS (Tyre pressure monitoring system)
warning lamp 48
tyre care 173
valves 174
winter 175

U

Unlocking 5, 10
Urban cycle 141
Used engine oil 144
Using cruise control 76
Using the parking aid 71

V

Valet mode 83
deselecting 83
Vehicle alarm 142
Vehicle battery
jump starting
connecting cables 169
Vehicle battery care 168
Vehicle cleaning
exterior 154
interior 155
parking sensors 72
Vehicle data recording 189
Vehicle recovery
towing eyes 74
Vehicle settings
valet mode 83
Video media player
controls 99
inhibited playback 100
VIN number 190
Voice control 101
navigation POI 102
training 102
tutorial 101
voicetags 102
Voice guidance 113
Volume
telephone 106

W

Warning lamps 46
ABS 48
airbags 48
brake 47
Critical warning message 46
DSC 48
fog lamps 48
headlamp high beam 49
indicators 49
lamp test 46
parking brake 47
seatbelt 47
TPMS (Tyre pressure
monitoring system) 48
Warning symbols (battery) 168
Warranty 120
Washer jets
blockages 146
Washers
operating 41
Washers (headlamps) 42
Weekly checks 142
Weights 164
Wheel changing 186
Wheels
wheel alignment data 167
Wheels and tyres
age degradation 176
checking the pressures after a repair . . 135
flat spots 176
pressures 174
puncture repair 132
punctured 175
repair kit 132, 133
repair procedure 134
replacements 175
snow chains 177
TPMS (Tyre pressure monitoring system)
warning lamp 48
tyre care 173
tyre label 190
valves 174

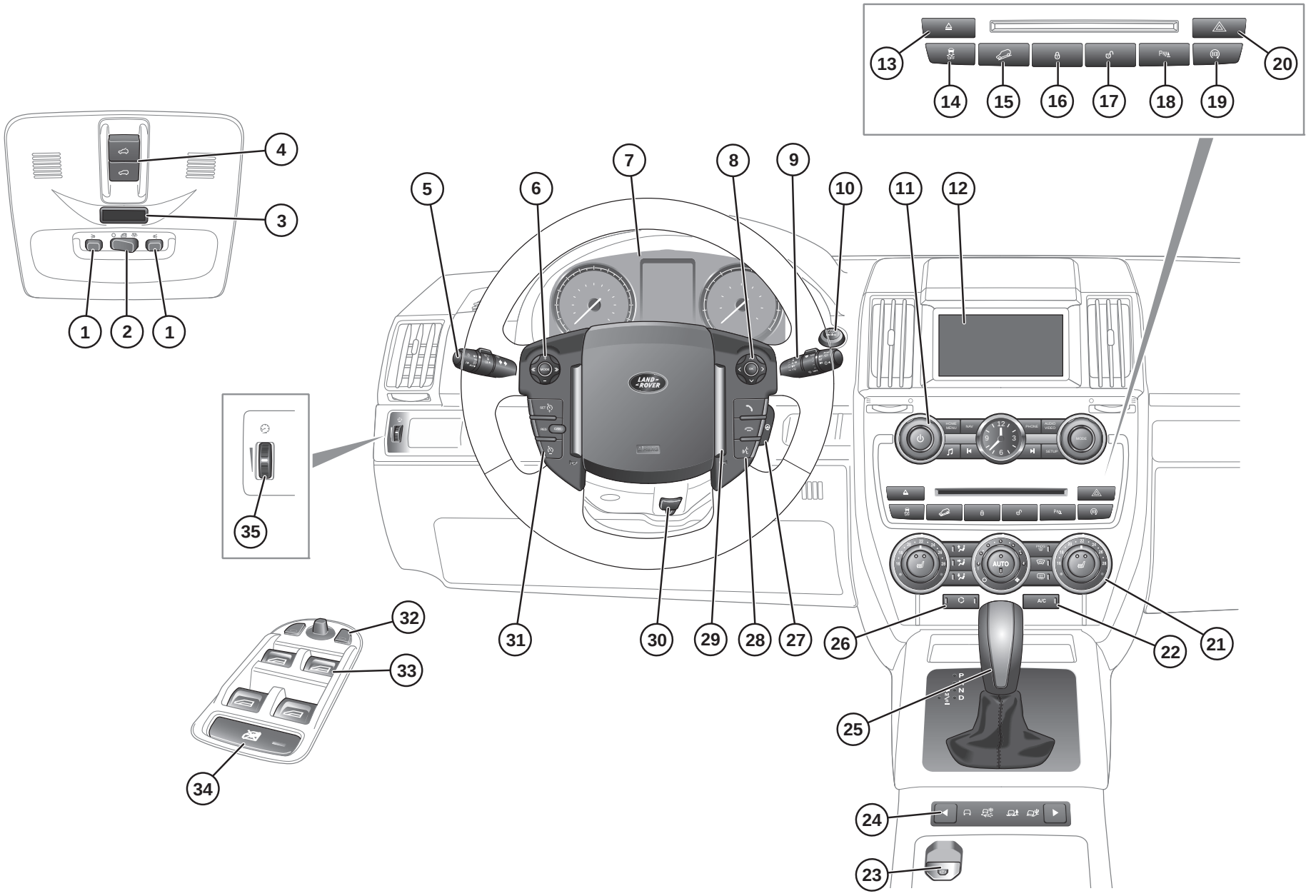
winter tyres 175
Windows 34
anti-trap protection 35
reset 154
sunroof
reset. 154
Windscreen wipers
speed-dependent mode 42
Windscreens (heated) 52
Wipers
operating 41
Wipers and washers
fluid
specification. 161
top up 161
operating 41
rain sensor. 42
wipers
speed-dependent mode 42

X

Xenon headlamps 147

DRIVER CONTROLS

1. Map reading lamp switch (**33**).
2. Main interior lamp switch (**33**).
3. Passenger airbag warning lamp (**28**).
4. Sunroof switches (**34**).
5. Lighting/direction indicator/trip computer (**31**/**44**).
6. Audio controls (**84**).
7. Instrument panel, warning lamps and message centre (**46**/**43**).
8. Message centre control (**43**).
9. Wiper/washer controls (**41**).
10. Engine START/STOP (**61**).
11. Audio system and controls (**84**).
12. Touch screen (**81**).
13. CD eject.
14. Dynamic stability control (DSC) off (**48**).
15. Hill descent control (HDC) (**79**).
16. Central locking, lock.
17. Central locking, unlock.
18. Parking aid switch (**71**).
19. Intelligent stop/start (**63**).
20. Hazard warning lamps.
21. Climate control (**50**).
22. Air conditioning on/off (**50**).
23. Electronic parking brake (**68**).
24. Terrain response (**77**).
25. Gear selector (**64**).
26. Climate control recirculation on/off switch (**50**).
27. Heated steering wheel.
28. Telephone and voice recognition (**103**/**101**).
29. Horn.
30. Steering column adjustment lever (**17**).
31. Cruise control switches (**76**).
32. Exterior mirror adjustment (**36**).
33. Window switches (**34**).
34. Rear window isolator (**34**).
35. Interior illumination control (**32**).


1
2
1
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
SL2271